

# Reverse Engineering the Eview Code in the FRB/US Model

Gary Young

June 23, 2016



# Contents

|          |   |           |
|----------|---|-----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Introduction</b>                               | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>FRB/US Package</b>                             | <b>3</b>  |
| 2.1      | example1 program . . . . .                        | 3         |
| 2.2      | example2 program . . . . .                        | 7         |
| 2.3      | example3 program . . . . .                        | 11        |
| 2.4      | example4 program . . . . .                        | 17        |
| 2.5      | ocpolicy program . . . . .                        | 23        |
| 2.6      | pings program . . . . .                           | 31        |
| 2.7      | stochsim program . . . . .                        | 40        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Model Consistent Expectation Solve Package</b> | <b>49</b> |
| 3.1      | example1 program . . . . .                        | 49        |
| 3.2      | example2 program . . . . .                        | 52        |
| 3.3      | example3 program . . . . .                        | 55        |
| 3.4      | example4 program . . . . .                        | 59        |
| 3.5      | example5 program . . . . .                        | 62        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>State Space Package</b>                        | <b>67</b> |
| 4.1      | Estimate Model . . . . .                          | 67        |
| 4.2      | Data Transformations . . . . .                    | 71        |
| 4.3      | Estimation Code . . . . .                         | 74        |
| 4.4      | Supply Filter . . . . .                           | 78        |
| 4.5      | Initial Values . . . . .                          | 81        |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Data Only Package</b>                          | <b>83</b> |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Appendices</b>                                 | <b>85</b> |
|          | <b>Routine Libraries</b>                          | <b>87</b> |
| 6.1      | Master Library . . . . .                          | 87        |
| 6.1.1    | quarterly date string shift . . . . .             | 87        |
| 6.1.2    | copy series into group . . . . .                  | 88        |
| 6.1.3    | set group to zero . . . . .                       | 89        |
| 6.1.4    | names of all series in group . . . . .            | 89        |

|                      |  |            |
|----------------------|--|------------|
| 6.1.5                | create new group . . . . .   | 90         |
| 6.1.6                | interpolate unavailable observations . . . . .                                 | 91         |
| 6.1.7                | set fiscal policy option . . . . .   | 92         |
| 6.1.8                | set monetary policy option . . . . .   | 93         |
| 6.1.9                | set monetary policy fed funds rate . . . . .                                   | 94         |
| 6.2                  | mce solve library . . . . .  | 95         |
| 6.2.1                | mce solve library change history . . . . .                                     | 95         |
| 6.2.2                | run model consistent expectations . . . . .                                    | 97         |
| 6.2.3                | determine endogenous and exogenous variables . . . . .                         | 104        |
| 6.2.4                | determine default method, linesearch, and other options . . . . .              | 107        |
| 6.2.5                | parse options containing equal signs . . . . .                                 | 111        |
| 6.2.6                | parse options not containing equal signs . . . . .                             | 111        |
| 6.2.7                | create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and<br>tables . . . . .   | 112        |
| 6.2.8                | model consistent coefficient simulation . . . . .                              | 114        |
| 6.2.9                | solve model consistent instrument values . . . . .                             | 123        |
| 6.2.10               | compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments . . . . .               | 125        |
| 6.2.11               | model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length pro-<br>cedure . . . . . | 131        |
| 6.2.12               | model consistent armijo optimization rule . . . . .                            | 133        |
| 6.2.13               | variable terminal values . . . . .   | 134        |
| 6.2.14               | set options based on defaults and overrides . . . . .                          | 136        |
| 6.2.15               | main unconstrained optimal control simulation . . . . .                        | 143        |
| 6.2.16               | main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints . . . . .          | 147        |
| 6.2.17               | model consistent optimal time-consistent solution . . . . .                    | 152        |
| 6.2.18               | compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments . . . . .         | 160        |
| 6.2.19               | solve model consistent expectations model . . . . .                            | 162        |
| 6.2.20               | convert mcz inequality constraints . . . . .                                   | 164        |
| 6.2.21               | shift left . . . . .   | 167        |
| 6.2.22               | find next delimiter . . . . .  | 168        |
| 6.2.23               | load frbus with transformed subsidiary model . . . . .                         | 169        |
| 6.2.24               | create wage and expectation variables in forward looking<br>model . . . . .    | 173        |
| <b>File Contents</b> |  | <b>175</b> |
| 6.3                  | scripts . . . . .  | 175        |
| 6.3.1                | setup.sh . . . . .   | 175        |
| 6.3.2                | check.sh . . . . .   | 176        |
| 6.4                  | frbus package . . . . .  | 177        |
| 6.4.1                | ld_frbus_cfs.prg . . . . .   | 177        |
| 6.4.2                | ld_frbus_eqs.prg . . . . .   | 178        |
| 6.4.3                | ld_mce_cfs.prg . . . . .   | 180        |
| 6.4.4                | ld_mce_eqs.prg . . . . .   | 183        |
| 6.4.5                | ld_some_eqs.prg . . . . .  | 188        |
| 6.4.6                | ld_varinfo.prg . . . . .   | 192        |
| 6.4.7                | regadd.prg . . . . .   | 194        |

|  |                                       |            |
|--|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 6.4.8                                  | example1 . . . . .                    | 194        |
| 6.4.9                                  | example2 . . . . .                    | 195        |
| 6.4.10                                 | example3 . . . . .                    | 195        |
| 6.4.11                                 | example4 . . . . .                    | 195        |
| 6.4.12                                 | ocpolicy . . . . .                    | 195        |
| 6.4.13                                 | pings . . . . .                       | 196        |
| 6.4.14                                 | plot_resids.prg . . . . .             | 202        |
| 6.4.15                                 | stochsim.prg . . . . .                | 206        |
| 6.4.16                                 | master_library.prg . . . . .          | 208        |
| 6.4.17                                 | mce_solve_library.prg . . . . .       | 209        |
| 6.5                                    | mce solve package . . . . .           | 213        |
| 6.5.1                                  | example1 . . . . .                    | 213        |
| 6.5.2                                  | example2 . . . . .                    | 213        |
| 6.5.3                                  | example3 . . . . .                    | 213        |
| 6.5.4                                  | example4 . . . . .                    | 213        |
| 6.5.5                                  | example5 . . . . .                    | 214        |
| 6.5.6                                  | mce_solve_libraryl.prg . . . . .      | 214        |
| 6.6                                    | state space package . . . . .         | 214        |
| 6.6.1                                  | data_transformations.prg . . . . .    | 214        |
| 6.6.2                                  | estimation_code.prg . . . . .         | 214        |
| 6.6.3                                  | frbus_supply_estimation.prg . . . . . | 214        |
| 6.6.4                                  | frbus_supply_filter.prg . . . . .     | 215        |
| 6.6.5                                  | initial_values.prg . . . . .          | 215        |
| <b>Notes, Bibliography and Indexes</b> |                                       | <b>217</b> |
| 6.7                                    | Eview Functions . . . . .             | 217        |
| 6.8                                    | Variable Information . . . . .        | 217        |
| 6.9                                    | Series Names . . . . .                | 218        |
| 6.10                                   | Chunks . . . . .                      | 227        |
| 6.11                                   | Index . . . . .                       | 229        |



# Chapter 1

## Introduction





## Chapter 2

# FRB/US Package

### 2.1 example1 program

```
3  <frbus example1 3>≡ (194c)
    ' Program for simple simulation under VAR expectations
    ,
    ' See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for information about
    ' this program

    ' *****
    ' Initial filename and parameter settings
    ' *****

    ' Subroutines
    include ../subs/master_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "1975q1"
    %wfend = "2030q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

    ' FRB/US model name and location
    %varmod = "stdver"
    %varpath = "../mods/"

    ' Input database
    %dbin = "../data/longbase"

    ' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2020q1"
```

```

%simend    = "2025q4"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' Load equations and coefficients
ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longbase
fetch(d=longbase) *

' Set monetary policy rule
smpl @all
call set_mp("dmpintay")

' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
smpl @all
dmptrsh = 0
rffmin = -9999
drstar = 0

' Set fiscal policy
smpl @all
call set_fp("dfpsrp")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
smpl @all
{%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
{%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
%suftrk = "_0"
smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.addassign @all
{%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"

```

```

{%varmod}.solve
scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
endif

' *****
' Simulate a shock to monetary policy rule
' *****

%sufsim = "_1"
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"

smpl %simstart %simstart
rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1

smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.solve

' *****
' Make a graph
' *****

smpl %simstart %simend
series zero = 0
series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4

graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display

graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display

graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display

graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)

```

```
fig1d.legend -display

graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Pertur
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

Uses dbopen 217a, dfpsrp 218, dmpintay 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a,  
group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, ld\_frbus\_cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179, lur 218,  
master\_library 208a, pic4 218, rff 218, rffmin 218, rg10 218, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93,  
solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, and xgap 218.

## 2.2 example2 program

```

7  <frbus example2 7>≡ (195a)
    ' Program for simple simulation with MCE expectations
    ,
    ' The switch variables %mcvars_wp and %mcvars_all control whether
    ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
    ' sector

    ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
    ' this program

    ' *****
    ' Initial filename and parameter settings
    ' *****

    ' Subroutines
    include ../subs/master_library
    include ../subs/mce_solve_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "1975q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

    ' FRB/US model names and locations
    %varmod = "stdver"
    %varpath = "../mods/"
    %mcemod = "pfver"
    %mcepath = "../mods/"

    ' Input database
    %dbin = "../data/longbase"

    ' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2020q1"
    %simend = "2069q4"

    ' *****
    ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
    ' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
    ' *****

```

```

' Specify MC expectations variables
%mcvars_wp = "yes"
%mcvars_all = "no"

' MCE asset pricing
%zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpi10b

' MCE elsewhere
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
    %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs z
endif

' Load equations and coefficients
call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,p

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longdata
fetch(d=longdata) *

' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
smpl @all
call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)

' Set monetary policy
smpl @all
call set_mp("dmpintay")

' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
smpl @all
dmptrsh = 0
rffmin = -9999
drstar = 0

' Set fiscal policy
smpl @all
call set_fp("dfpsrp")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
smpl @all
{%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
call groupnew("endog","_aerr")

```

```

    call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
  {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
  {%mccmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
  %suftrk = "_0"
  smpl %simstart %simend
  {%varmod}.addassign @all
  {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
  {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
  {%varmod}.solve
  scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
  if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
  endif
  {%mccmod}.addassign @all
  {%mccmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' Simulate a monetary policy shock
' *****

  %sufsim = "_1"
  {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
  {%mccmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"

  smpl %simstart %simstart
  rffintay_a = rffintay_a + 1

  %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
  %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
  %simstr = "type=single"
  smpl %simstart %simend
  call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)

' *****
' Make a graph
' *****

  smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
  series zero = 0
  series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff

```

```

series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4

graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display

graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display

graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display

graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
fig1d.legend -display

graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
%title = " Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Shock\r"
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
endif
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
endif
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1

```

Uses dbopen 217a, dfpsrp 218, dmpintay 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a, group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, lur 218, make\_frbus\_mcevars 173, master\_library 208a, mce\_load\_frbus 169, mce\_run 97, mce\_solve\_library 209 214b, pic4 218, rff 218, rffmin 218, rg10 218, sector 217b, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, xgap 218, zdivgr 218, zecd 218, zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218, zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218, zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zxbd 218, zxbi 218, zxbs 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218, zyht 218, and zynid 218.



## 2.3 example3 program

11 `<frbus example3 11>≡` (195b)

```

' Program for simulation under VAR expectations that illustrates how
' to set the monetary policy options that impose the zero lower bound
' on the funds rate and delay the liftoff of the funds rate from the
' ZLB until either the unemployment rate falls below a threshold or
' inflation rises above a threshold.
'
' See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for general information about
' this program.

' Additional notes:

' 1. The scenario involves a set of negative aggregate demand
' shocks and a positive risk premium shock that start in 2003q3,
' when the baseline (historical) funds rate is about one percent.
' The shocks are equal to the equation errors actually observed
' in the four quarters starting in 2008q4.

' 2. To impose the ZLB set %zb = "yes" (rather than "no")

' 3. To impose the policy liftoff threshold conditions set both
' %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes". For illustrative purposes
' and reflecting the baseline conditions in 2003 and the years
' that immediately follow, the inflation threshold is set to 3.0
' and the unemployment threshold is set to 7.0, subject to the
' the adjustments described next.

' 4. Because the threshold conditions only make sense once the ZLB is
' binding, unemployment is above its threshold level (lurtrsh),
' and inflation is below its threshold (pitrsh), which is not the
' case in the initial simulation quarters, the program turns on the
' threshold code (using dmptrsh) in the 5th simulation quarter,
' at which point these conditions hold. In addition, for the threshold
' code to work properly, the endogenous switch variable dmptr must be
' zero in the quarter prior to the quarter in which the threshold code is
' turned on. This is accomplished by setting the baseline data on dmptr
' to zero and by setting the unemployment and inflation thresholds
' (lurtrsh, pitrsh) to values in the first four simulation quarters that
' would not flip the dmptr switch to one.

' 4. Choose one of the five available policy rules by setting
' %policy to one of rffintay, rfftay, rfftlr, rffalt, or rffgen.

' 5. If neither the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the monetary policy

```

```

' equations have baseline-tracking adds and the simulation is
' a standard deviations-from-baseline exercise.

' 6. If either the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the add factors on
' monetary policy equations are set to zero after the tracking adds
' are computed so that the ZLB and threshold conditions are based on the
' actual simulated outcomes for the funds rate and inflation and unemployment,
' not their deviations from baseline.

' *****
' Initial filename and parameter settings
' *****

' Subroutines
include ../subs/master_library

' Workfile
%wfstart = "1975q1"
%wfend = "2012q4"
%mainpage = "main"
wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

' FRB/US model name and location
%varmod = "stdver"
%varpath = "../mods/"

' Input database
%dbin = "../data/longbase"

' Simulation range
%simstart = "2003q3"
%simend = "2008q2"

' Policy
%zb = "yes"
%threshold = "yes"
%policy = "rfftay"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' Load equations and coefficients
ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)

```

```
ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longbase
fetch(d=longbase) *

' Set monetary policy rule
smpl @all
%policydmp = @replace(%policy,"rff","dmp")
call set_mp(%policydmp)

' Set ZLB
if %zb = "yes" then
    rffmin = .125
else
    rffmin = -9999
endif

' Set threshold variables
if %threshold = "yes" then
    if %zb = "no" then
        @uiprompt("When policy thresholds are imposed, the zero bound must also be imposed")
        stop
    endif
    smpl @all
    call dateshift(%simstart,%quarter4,3)
' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) not active in first 4 qtrs
    smpl %simstart - 1 %quarter4
    dmptrsh = 0
    lurtrsh = -9999
    pitrsh = 9999
    dmptr = 0
' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) active starting in qtr 5
    smpl %quarter4 + 1 %simend
    dmptrsh = 1
    lurtrsh = 7.0
    pitrsh = 3.0
    smpl @all
    else
    smpl @all
    dmptrsh = 0
    endif

smpl @all
drstar = 0
```

```

' Set fiscal policy
  smpl @all
  call set_fp("dfpsrp")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
  smpl @all
  {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
  call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
  call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
  {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
  %suftrk = "_0"
  smpl %simstart 2012q4
  {%varmod}.addassign @all
  {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
  {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
  {%varmod}.solve
  scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
  if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
  endif

' Set monetary policy add factors to zero when ZLB or threshold are
' imposed

if %zb = "yes" then
  smpl @all
  {%policy}_a = 0
  rffrule_a = 0
  rffe_a = 0
  if %threshold = "yes" then
    dmptpi_a = 0
    dmptlur_a = 0
    dmptmax_a = 0
    dmptr_a = 0
  endif
endif

' *****
' Simulation
' *****

```

```

%sufsim = "_1"
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"

' shock values are taken from equation residuals for 2008q4-2009q3
eco_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.006, -.006, -.011, -.001
ecd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.091, -.018, -.021, .029
eh_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.076, -.078, -.040, .073
epd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.096, -.062, .014, .032
eps_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.018, -.046, -.036, -.017
rbbbp_a.fill(o=%simstart) 2.70, 0.38, -0.89, -1.35

smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.solve

' *****
' Make a graph
' *****

smpl %simstart %simend

graph fig1a.line rff rff{%sufsim}
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display

graph fig1b.line rg10 rg10{%sufsim}
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display

graph fig1c.line lur lur{%sufsim}
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display

graph fig1d.line pic4 pic4{%sufsim}
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
fig1d.legend -display

%title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Negative AD Shock\r(VAR Expectations"
%title = %title + "; Policy = " + %policy + ")"
if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "no" then
    %title = %title + "\r(ZLB Imposed)"
endif
if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes" then
    %title = %title + "\r(ZLB and Thresholds Imposed)"
endif

```

```
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
fig1.addtext(b,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Blue: Actual; Red: Simulated
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

Uses dateshift 87, dbopen 217a, dfpsrp 218, dmptr 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a, group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, ld\_frbus\_cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179, lur 218, lurtrsh 218, master\_library 208a, pic4 218, ptrsh 218, rff 218, rffalt 218, rffgen 218, rffintay 218, rffmin 218, rfftay 218, rfftlr 218, rg10 218, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, and xgap 218.

## 2.4 example4 program

```

17  <frbus example4 17>≡ (195c)
    ' This MCE example program illustrates:
    '
    ' 1. how to use a monetary policy rule that is not one of the policy
    '   alternatives included in FRB/US;
    ' 2. how to add new MCE expectations variables;
    ' 3. how to drop one of the regular FRB/US equations as part of the process
    '   of loading the model
    '
    ' Most of the code needed illustrate these issues is located between
    ' the "start of new code" and "end of new code" comments below
    '
    ' The switch variables %mcvars_wp and %mcvars_all control whether
    ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
    ' sector
    '
    ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
    ' this program
    '
    ' *****
    ' Initial filename and parameter settings
    ' *****
    '
    ' Subroutines
    ' include ../subs/master_library
    ' include ../subs/mce_solve_library
    '
    ' Workfile
    ' %wfstart = "1975q1"
    ' %wfend = "2100q4"
    ' %mainpage = "main"
    ' wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
    '
    ' FRB/US model names and locations
    ' %varmod = "stdver"
    ' %varpath = "../mods/"
    ' %mcemod = "pfver"
    ' %mcepath = "../mods/"
    '
    ' Input database
    ' %dbin = "../data/longbase"
    '
    ' Simulation range

```

```

%simstart = "2010q1"
%simend   = "2069q4"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' Specify MC expectations variables
%mcvars_wp = "no"
%mcvars_all = "yes"

' MCE asset pricing
%zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpi10f"

' MCE elsewhere
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
    %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs "
endif

' Load equations and coefficients

' drop one of the FRB/US monetary policy rule equations (rffgen) so that it can be
' replaced below with an alternative rule
%allbut = "rffgen"
call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcp",%allbut)

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longdata
fetch(d=longdata) *

' *****
' *****
' start of new code (aside from the change above to mce_load_frbus and
' the change below to the call to set_mp)

' Code a first-difference interest rate rule as rffgen. The first-difference rule d
' the expected output gap three quarters ahead (zgap3) and on expected 4-qtr inflation
' quarters ahead (zpic43). The name of each new expectation must start with a "z".
{%varmod}.append rffgen-rffgen_aerr = rffe(-1) + .5*(zpic43-pitarg) + .5*(zgap3-zg

```



```

' Add the MCE definitions of zgap3 and zpic43 to the forward-looking model,
' noting that the MCE names of these variables must start with a "w" rather than a "z".
{%mccmod}.append wgap3-wgap3_aerr = xgap2(3)
{%mccmod}.append wpic43-wpic43_aerr = picx4(3)
' Add expectations error equations to the MCE model
{%mccmod}.append ezgap3 = zgap3-wgap3
{%mccmod}.append ezpic43 = zpic43-wpic43

' Add to the backward-looking model simple equations for the new expectations variables.
' Technically, these equations should be the appropriate VAR expectations formulas, but
' because in this program these expectations will always be MCE, the form of their
' backward-looking identities is not very important.
{%varmod}.append zgap3-zgap3_aerr = .5*xgap2(-1)
{%varmod}.append zpic43-zpic43_aerr = .5*picx4(-1)+.5*ptr(-1)

' Add the new MCE variables to the %zvars string
%zvars = %zvars + " zgap3 zpic43"

' Define baseline values of the new expectations variables
smpl @all
series zgap3 = xgap2(3)
series zpic43 = picx4(3)

' Make sure that the baseline data for rffgen matches the baseline data for rffe
rffgen = rffe

' end of new code
' *****
' *****

' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
smpl @all
call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)

' Set monetary policy to use the first-difference policy rule (coded as rffgen)
smpl @all
call set_mp("dmpgen")

' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
smpl @all
dmptrsh = 0
rffmin = -9999
drstar = 0

' Set fiscal policy

```

```

smpl @all
call set_fp("dfpsrp")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
smpl @all
{%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
{%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
{%mccmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
%suftrk = "_0"
smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.addassign @all
{%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
{%varmod}.solve
scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
endif
{%mccmod}.addassign @all
{%mccmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' Simulate the effects of a one-percent consumption shock
' *****

%sufsim = "_1"
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
{%mccmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"

smpl %simstart %simstart
eco_a = eco_a + .01

%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
%simstr = "type=single"
smpl %simstart %simend
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)

```

```

'*****
' Make a graph
'*****

smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
series zero = 0
series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4

graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display

graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display

graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display

graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
fig1d.legend -display

graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
%title = " Macroeconomic Effects of a Shock to Consumption\r"
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
endif
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
    %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
endif
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1

```

Uses dbopen 217a, dfpsrp 218, dmpgen 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a,  
group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, lur 218, make\_frbus\_mcevars 173, master\_library 208a,  
mce\_load\_frbus 169, mce\_run 97, mce\_solve\_library 209 214b, pic4 218, picx4 218,

pitarg 218, ptr 218, rff 218, rffe 218, rffgen 218, rffmin 218, rg10 218, sector 217b, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, xgap 218, xgap2 218, zdivgr 218, zecd 218, zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218, zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218, zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zxbd 218, zxbi 218, zxbs 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218, zyht 218, and zynid 218.

## 2.5 ocpolicy program

23 `<frbus ocpolicy 23>≡` (195d)

```

' Routine to simulate how the SEP baseline forecast would change if
' policymakers commit to a path for the federal funds rate that is
' determined by optimal-control (OC) techniques to minimize a
' quadratic loss function.
'
' Detailed information on the mechanics of the OC algorithm and the
' various required and optional parameters that set up and guide its
' execution is available in the MCE Solve Users Guide in the
' documentation directory. Most relevant is the part of section 5
' that describes the "opt" simulation type as well as table 7.
'
' As specified below, the loss function penalizes equally weighted
' squared deviations of the unemployment rate from the natural rate,
' squared deviations of inflation from a 2 percent, and squared
' quarterly changes in the funds rate.
'
' In the SEP baseline, agents with model-consistent (MC) expectations
' are initially assumed to project that the funds rate will follow the
' baseline path and to set their baseline expectations
' accordingly. At the start of the optimal control simulation, however,
' these agents immediately and fully revise their expectations to be
' consistent with the revision to the funds rate path that occurs under
' optimal control -- that is, agents have rational expectations and
' announced policy actions are completely credible.
'
' The experiment can be run with the zero lower bound (ZLB) imposed
' (%zerobound = "yes") or not imposed (%zerobound = "no"). When
' the ZLB is imposed, a penalty term is added to the loss function.
'
' *****
' Initial filename and parameter settings
' *****
'
' Subroutines
' include ../subs/master_library
' include ../subs/mce_solve_library
'
' Workfile
' %wfstart = "1975q1"
' %wfend = "2100q4"
' %mainpage = "main"
' wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

```

```

' FRB/US model names and locations
%varmod = "stdver"
%varpath = "../mods/"
%mcemod = "pfver"
%mcepath = "../mods/"

' Input database
%dbin = "../data/longbase"

' Simulation range
%simstart = "2014q4"
%simend = "2070q4"

' Primary loss function parameters: The value of the policy instrument
' is chosen optimally from %drvstart to %drvend (60 qtrs) to minimize
' the loss function from %evlstart to %evlend (80 qtrs). The three
' arguments of the period loss function are weighted by the the
' weight parameters and over time losses are discounted at the rate
' %discount
%evlstart = %simstart
%drvstart = %simstart
call dateshift(%evlstart,%evlend,79)
call dateshift(%drvstart,%drvend,59)
%discount = ".99"
%u_weight = "1.0"
%p_weight = "1.0"
%r_weight = "1.0"

' Optionally impose the zero lower bound
%zerobound = "yes"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' Specify MC expectations variables
%mcvars_wp = "yes"
%mcvars_all = "no"

' MCE asset pricing
%zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpi10f"

' MCE elsewhere
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then

```

```

    %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    endif
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
        %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
        %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxnfbz zxnfbz zyh zy"
    endif

' Load equations and coefficients
call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mce_mod,path_f=%mce_path")

' Add a ugap equation
{%varmod}.append ugap - ugap_aerr = lur - lurnat

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longdata
fetch(d=longdata) *

' Define SEP-consistent ustar and ugap series; this step is needed because
' the baseline value of lurnat may not be fully SEP-consistent in the
' short-to-medium ruun
smpl @all
series ustar = lurnat
smpl %simstart 2025q4
ustar = 5.35
smpl @all
series ugap = lur-ustar
series ugap_aerr = 0

' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
smpl @all
call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)

' Set monetary policy option (the residual on the equation of
' the chosen option is the OC policy instrument)
smpl @all
call set_mp("dmptay")

' Initially turn off zero lower bound; if %zerobound = "yes", it will be
' imposed below by adding a penalty term to the loss function.
smpl @all
rffmin = -9999

' Turn off policy thresholds
dmptrsh = 0

' Let the perceived equilibrium real interest rate vary
drstar = 1

```

```

' Set fiscal policy so that it is exogenous for first 20 qtrs and then
' turns on debt targeting rule
smpl %simstart %simstart + 19
call set_fp("dfpex")
smpl %simstart + 20 %simend
call set_fp("dfpdbl")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
smpl @all
{%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
{%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
{%mccmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
%suftrk = "_0"
smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.addassign @all
{%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
{%varmod}.solve
scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
endif
{%mccmod}.addassign @all
{%mccmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

'*****
' optimal policy setup
'*****

' The policy instrument is a time varying constant in the equation
' for the selected policy rule
group opt_instrus rftay_aerr

' Loss function variables (unemployment gap, 4-qtr PCE inflation,
' and the first difference of the federal funds rate)
group opt_targs ugap pic4 delrff

```



```

' The desired paths of the loss function variables are specified in
' series with "_t" suffix.
smpl @all
series ugap_t = 0
series delrff_t = 0
series pic4_t = 2.0

' The weights on the loss function arguments are specified in
' series with "_w" suffix.
series ugap_w = @val(%u_weight)
series pic4_w = @val(%p_weight)
series delrff_w = @val(%r_weight)

!discount = @val(%discount)
smpl %simstart+1 %simend
ugap_w = !discount * ugap_w(-1)
pic4_w = !discount * pic4_w(-1)
delrff_w = !discount * delrff_w(-1)

' Zero bound penalty function
if %zerobound = "yes" then
    {%varmod}.append penalty - penalty_aerr = _
        @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _
            3.0*((rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift)-rff), _
            0) _
        + @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _
            .10*exp(10*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))), _
            .10*exp(-20*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))))
smpl @all
series rff_lo_bnd = .125
series rff_lo_shift = .00
series penalty = 0
series penalty_aerr = 0
series rffmin = -9999
%penalty_weight = "10.0"
opt_targs.add penalty
smpl @all
series penalty_a = 0
series penalty_t = 0
series penalty_w = @val(%penalty_weight)
smpl %simstart+1 %simend
penalty_w = !discount * penalty_w(-1)
endif

```

```

'*****
' optimal policy simulation
'*****

% sufcontrol = "_1"

' In %simstr, the "type=opt" string designates a commitment-based
' OC simulation. The required "instrus" and "targs" keywords point to
' the groups containing the policy instrument(s) and target variables.
' FRB/US simulations of this type generally run much more quickly with
' the newton MCE algorithm than they do with qnewton.
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
%algstr = "jinit=interp(4), meth=newton"
%simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
%simstr = %simstr + ",scen,suf=" + %sufcontrol + ",solveopt=%sopt"
%simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)

' When the ZLB is imposed, run the OC algorithm a second time,
' after adjusting the intercept of the penalty function,
' to hit ZLB more closely
if %zerobound = "yes" then
    smpl if rff{%sufcontrol} < .2
        rff_lo_shift = .125 - rff{%sufcontrol}
        %modstr = ""
        %algstr = ""
        %simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
        %simstr = %simstr + ",solveopt=%sopt"
        %simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
        smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
        call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
    endif

'*****
' graph results
'*****

call dateshift(%simstart,%graphstart,-8)
call dateshift(%simstart,%graphend,32)

smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1a.line rff{%sufcontrol} rff
fig1a.options size(7,4.2)
fig1a.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)

```

```

fig1a.datelabel format(yy)
fig1a.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1a.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1a.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1a.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1a.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Federal Funds Rate

```

```

smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1b.line rg10{%sufcontrol} rg10
fig1b.options size(7,4.2)
fig1b.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)
fig1b.datelabel format(yy)
fig1b.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1b.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1b.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1b.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1b.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) 10-Year Treasury Yield

```

```

smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1c.line lur{%sufcontrol} lur
fig1c.options size(7,4.2)
fig1c.legend display -inbox position(3.9,0.3) font("arial",15)
fig1c.datelabel format(yy)
fig1c.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1c.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1c.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1c.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1c.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Unemployment Rate

```

```

smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1d.line pic4{%sufcontrol} pic4
fig1d.options size(7,4.2)
fig1d.legend display -inbox position(0.5,0.2) font("arial",15)
fig1d.datelabel format(yy)
fig1d.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1d.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1d.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1d.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1d.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) PCE Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)

```

```

graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy with Rational Expectations"
endif
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
    %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy\n With Rational Expectations"
endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
    %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy With Full Rational Expectations"
endif

if %zerobound = "yes" then
    %title = %title + "\rZLB Imposed"
else
    %title = %title + "\rZLB not Imposed"
endif

fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",20)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1

```

Uses dateshift 87, dbopen 217a, delrff 218, dfpdbl 218, dfpex 218, dmptay 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a, group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, left 218, lur 218, lurnat 218, make\_frbus\_mcevars 173, master\_library 208a, mce\_load\_frbus 169, mce\_run 97, mce\_solve\_library 209 214b, pic4 218, rff 218, rffmin 218, rg10 218, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, xgap 218, zdivgr 218, zecd 218, zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218, zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218, zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zxbd 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218, zyht 218, and zynid 218.

## 2.6 pings program

```

31  <simulate six ping simulations, aka simple IRFs 31>≡ (196a)
    ' Simulate six ping simulations (AKA simple IRFs)
    '
    ' Notes:
    '
    ' 1. Choose between VAR expectations and several MCE alternatives
    ' with the %mcevars parameter.
    '
    '   - %mcevars = "none"    => VAR expectations everywhere
    '   - %mcevars = "mcap"   => MCE in asset pricing, VAR expectations elsewhere
    '   - %mcevars = "mcapwp" => MCE in asset pricing and price-wage setting;
    '       VAR expectations elsewhere
    '   - %mcevars = "all"    => MCE everywhere
    '
    ' Note that even when %mcevars = "none", the program does many
    ' of the setup steps for an MCE simulation even though it never
    ' uses what they create.
    '
    ' 2. Seven of the pings are one-time shocks to the residual of an
    ' equation whose structure contains a large autoregressive
    ' element. The remaining ping involves a permanent increase in the
    ' level of trend MFP.
    '
    ' 3. The eight pings are:
    '
    '   - A 100 basis point upward shock to the rffintay monetary
    '     policy rule
    '   - An increase in federal purchases equal to one percent of
    '     baseline GDP
    '   - A one percent permanent increase in the level of trend MPF
    '   - A 100 bp increase in the equity premium
    '   - A $10 per barrel increase in the price of oil
    '   - A 1 percent (ar) increase in the growth rate of
    '     multifactor productivity
    '   - Increases of 100 basis points to the 10-year Treasury term premium,
    '     75 basis points to the 5-year premium, and 30 basis points to the
    '     30-year premium
    '   - A 10 percent increase in the (real) exchange rate
    '
    ' *****
    ' Initial filename and parameter settings
    ' *****
    '
    ' Subroutines

```

```

include ../subs/master_library
include ../subs/mce_solve_library

' Workfile
%wfstart = "1975q1"
%wfend = "2100q4"
%mainpage = "main"
wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

' FRB/US model names and locations
%varmod = "stdver"
%varpath = "../mods/"
%mcemod = "pfver"
%ncepath = "../mods/"

' Input database
%dbin = "../data/longbase"

' Simulation range
%simstart = "2020q1"
%simend = "2069q4"

' Choose an expectations option ("none" => VAR expectations, "mcap", "mcapwp", "all")
%mcevars = "none"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' MCE variable setup
if %mcevars = "none" then
    %zvars = "zpic58 "
else
    %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zp
    if %mcevars = "mcapwp" or %mcevars = "all" then
        %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    endif
    if %mcevars = "all" then
        %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxb
    endif
endif

' Load equations and coefficients
call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,p

```

```

' Load data
  dbopen %dbin as longdata
  fetch(d=longdata) *

' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
  smpl @all
  call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)

' Set monetary policy
  smpl @all
  call set_mp("dmpintay")

' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
  smpl @all
  dmptrsh = 0
  rffmin = -9999
  drstar = 0

' Set fiscal policy
  smpl @all
  call set_fp("dfpsrp")

' Set _aerr variables to zero
  smpl @all
  {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
  call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
  call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
  {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
  {%mccmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
  %suftrk = "_0"
  smpl %simstart %simend
  {%varmod}.addassign @all
  {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
  {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
  {%varmod}.solve
  scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
  if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
    stop
  endif
  {%mccmod}.addassign @all

```

```

{%mccmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' Ping simulations
' *****

%suf = "_1"
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"
{%mccmod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"

' *****
' Federal Funds Rate: RFF ping

%ping = "rff"

smpl %simstart %simstart
rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
    {%varmod}.solve
else
    %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
    %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
    %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
    call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr - 1
call copyit

' *****
' Treasury Term Premium: RG10P, RG5P, and RG30P ping

%ping = "prem"
smpl @all
series rg30p_aerr = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart
rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr + 1
rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr + .75
rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr + .35
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then

```



```

    {%varmod}.solve
  else
    %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
    %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
    %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
    call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
  endif
  smpl %simstart %simstart
  rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr - 1
  rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr - 0.75
  rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr - .35
  call copyit
  smpl %simstart %simend
  series rg10p_{%ping} = rg10p{%suf} - rg10p

' *****
' Federal Purchases: EGFO ping

%ping = "eg"
smpl %simstart %simstart
egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr + .01*xgdpn/egfon
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
  {%varmod}.solve
else
  %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
  %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
  %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
  call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr - .01*xgdpn/egfon
call copyit
smpl %simstart %simend
series egfn_shr_{%ping} = 100*(egfn{%suf}/xgdpn{%suf} - egfn/xgdpn)

' *****
' Equity Premium: REQP ping

%ping = "reqp"
smpl %simstart %simstart
reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr + 1
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
  {%varmod}.solve
else

```

```

%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr - 1
call copyit
smpl %simstart %simend
series reqp_{%ping} = reqp{%suf} - reqp

' *****
' Oil Prices: POILR ping

%ping = "oil"
smpl %simstart %simstart
poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr + 10/pxb
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
    {%varmod}.solve
else
    %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mccmod,mce_vars=%zvars"
    %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
    %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
    call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr - 10/pxb
call copyit
smpl %simstart %simend
series poil_{%ping} = poil{%suf} - poil

' *****
' Exchange Rate: FPXRR ping

%ping = "exch"
smpl %simstart %simstart
series shock_fpxr = log(1.1)
fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr + shock_fpxr

smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
    {%varmod}.solve

```

```

else
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mce_mod,mce_vars=%zvars"
%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif

series fpxr_{%ping} = fpxr{%suf} - fpxr
smpl %simstart %simstart
fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr - shock_fpxr
call copyit

' *****
' HMFPT ping

%ping = "hmfpt"
smpl %simstart %simstart
hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr + 1
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
    {%varmod}.solve
else
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mce_mod,mce_vars=%zvars"
%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr - 1
call copyit
smpl %simstart %simend
series hmfpt_{%ping} = hmfpt{%suf} - hmfpt

' *****
' MFPT ping

%ping = "mfp"
smpl %simstart %simstart
mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr + .01
smpl %simstart %simend
if %mcevars = "none" then
    {%varmod}.solve
else
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mce_mod,mce_vars=%zvars"

```

```

%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
endif
smpl %simstart %simstart
mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr - .01
call copyit
smpl %simstart %simend
series mfpt_{%ping} = 100*(mfpt{%suf}/mfpt - 1)

' *****
' Individual ping graphs
' *****
call graphit

' *****
' Composite figures
' *****

if %mcevars = "none" then
    %exp = "VAR Expectations"
endif
if %mcevars = "mcap" then
    %exp = "MC (MCAP) Expectations"
endif
if %mcevars = "mcapwp" then
    %exp = "MC (MCAP+WP) Expectations"
endif
if %mcevars = "all" then
    %exp = "MC (ALL) Expectations"
endif

%t1 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- I"
%t2 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- II"
%t3 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- III"

' Figure 1

graph fig_1.merge gr_rff gr_eg gr_reqp
fig_1.align(3,.4,1.0)
fig_1.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t1
show fig_1

```

' Figure 2

```
graph fig_2.merge gr_oil gr_hmfp gr_mfp
fig_2.align(3,.4,1.0)
fig_2.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t2
show fig_2
```

' Figure 3

```
graph fig_3.merge gr_prem gr_exch
fig_3.align(3,.4,1.0)
fig_3.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t3
show fig_3
```

Uses copyit 196b, dbopen 217a, dfpsrp 218, dmpintay 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, egfn 218, egfon 218, fetch 217a, fpxr 218, graphit 198, group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, hmfp 218, make\_frbus\_mcevars 173, master\_library 208a, mce\_load\_frbus 169, mce\_run 97, mce\_solve\_library 209 214b, mfpt 218, pings 196a, poil 218, pxb 218, reqp 218, rff 218, rffintay 218, rffmin 218, rg10p 218, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, wfcreate 217a, xgap 218, xgdpn 218, zdivgr 218, zecd 218, zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218, zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218, zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zxbd 218, zxbi 218, zxbs 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218, zyht 218, and zynid 218.

## 2.7 stochsim program

```

40  <stochastic simulations under variable expectations 40>≡ (206a)
    ' Program for stochastic sims under VAR expectations

    ' The stochastic shocks are bootstrapped from the de-meaned
    ' historical errors of stochastic equations. The parameters
    ' %residstart and %residend declare the historical error range.
    ' A list of stochastic equations is extracted from the file
    ' pointed to by %varinfo.

    ' The bootstrap procedure randomly draws one historical quarter
    ' at a time when the parameter %errorblock = 1; alternatively, if
    ' %errorblock = 2, then the procedure would randomly draw two
    ' successive quarters at a time.

    ' The stochastic replications are simulated in a simple loop,
    ' rather than using the built-in EViews stochastic simulation
    ' procedure, so that shocks in the first simulation quarter can
    ' be scaled down by the parameter %q1_shock_damp. This feature
    ' is useful when uncertainty about the first simulation quarter
    ' in real-time analysis by known information. The shocks are
    ' not rescaled when %q1_shock_damp = 1.

    ' Similarly, the parameter %rff_weight_q1 is also designed to be
    ' used in real-time analysis when the first simulation quarter
    ' corresponds to a quarter that is already under way. The
    ' parameter provides the fractional value to be given to the
    ' monetary policy rule; the remaining fractional value is given to
    ' an exogenous value.

    ' The document Simulation Basics discusses the effects of
    ' imposing the zero lower bound (ZLB) on the federal funds rate
    ' (%zerobound parameter) and imposing threshold conditions
    ' on the liftoff of the funds rate from a ZLB episode
    ' (%threshold parameter).

    ' *****
    ' Initial filename and parameter settings
    ' *****

    ' Subroutines
    include ../subs/master_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "1965q1"

```

```

%wfcend = "2020q4"
%mainpage = "main"
wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfcend}

' FRB/US model name and location
%varmod = "stdver"
%varpath = "../mods/"
%varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"

' Input database
%dbin = "../data/longbase"

' Simulation range
%simstart = "2014q1"
%simend = "2018q4"

' Stochastic parameters
rndseed 12345
%errorblock = "1"
%residstart = "1970q1"
%residend = "2012q4"
%nsims = "1000"
%q1_shock_damp = ".5"
%dbout_series = "rff lur picxfe picnia picx4 xgap2 hggdp anngr"

' Monetary policy
%zerobound = "yes"
%threshold = "yes"
%rff_weight_q1 = ".25"

' *****
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' *****

' Load equations, coefficients, and variable information
ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)

' add 4-qtr gdp growth equation
{%varmod}.append anngr - anngr_aerr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)

' Load data
dbopen %dbin as longbase
fetch(d=longbase) *
```

```

smpl @all
series anngr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)

' Set monetary policy to inertial Taylor rule (dmpintay, rffintay)
smpl @all
call set_mp("dmpintay")
if %zerobound = "yes" then
    rffmin = .250
else
    rffmin = -9999
endif
if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "no" then
    %err = "Error: policy threshold conditions can only be used when the ZLB is imposed"
    @uiprompt(%err)
    stop
endif
if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "yes" then
    dmptrsh = 1
    dmptr = 0
else
    dmptrsh = 0
endif
drstar = 0

smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
dmpintay = @val(%rff_weight_q1)
dmpex = 1 - dmpintay

' Set fiscal policy
smpl @all
call set_fp("dfpex")

dmpstb = 1

' Set _aerr variables to zero
smpl @all
{%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Standard solution options
{%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=14,z=1e-14)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors
%suftrk = "_0"
smpl %residstart %simend

```



```

{%varmod}.addassign @all
{%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
{%varmod}.solve
scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
if mm > .0001 then
    statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
stop
endif

' *****
' More monetary policy settings
' *****

' if policy thresholds are turned on, set add factors on endogenous
' threshold switch variables to zero
if %threshold = "yes" then
    smpl @all
    dmptpi_a = 0
    dmptlur_a = 0
    dmptmax_a = 0
    dmptr_a = 0
endif

' if the zero bound is binding in part or all of the baseline, the
' adds (_a) on the policy rule and the funds rate equations are
' determined so as to satisfy the following conditions.
'
' a. the stochastic funds rate equals the maximum of the zero bound and
' the prediction of the chosen policy rule (this simply requires that
' rffe_a and rffe_aerr be zero)
' b. the prediction of the chosen policy rule is subject to _a add factors
' that are determined as follows:
' (1) in quarters when the zero bound is not binding in the baseline,
' the associated add factors equal the values that make
' the policy rule equation match the baseline funds rate under
' baseline conditions (this is satisfied by the tracking adds on
' the policy rule as long as the baseline value of the policy rule
' variable equals the baseline funds rate);
' (2) in quarters when the zero bound is binding in the baseline,
' the associated add factors are determined by linear interpolation
' of the add factors generated according to b(1) for the
' unbound quarters;
' (3) when the zero bound is binding in all baseline quarters, the
' policy rule add factors are zero;

```

```

'      (4) the zero bound is assumed to be binding in the baseline whenever
'          the baseline funds rate (rffe) is within 25 basis points of the
'          zero bound variable (rffmin).

smpl %simstart %simend
series not_constrnd = ((rffe - rffmin) >= .25)
!tmp_max = @max(not_constrnd)
!tmp_min = @min(not_constrnd)

' zero bound binding in some quarters
if (!tmp_max = 1) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
    smpl %simstart %simend
    rffe_a = 0
    rffe_aerr = 0
    rffintay_aerr = 0
    smpl %simstart %simend if (not_constrnd = 0)
    rffintay_a = NA
    %series_in = "rffintay_a"
    %series_out = %series_in + "_int"
    call interp_lin(%series_in,%series_out,%simstart,%simend)
    rffintay_a = {%series_out}
endif

' zero bound binding in all quarters
if (!tmp_max = 0) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
    smpl %simstart %simend
    rffe_a = 0
    rffe_aerr = 0
    rffintay_aerr = 0
    rffintay_a = 0
endif

' *****
' Stochastic shocks
' *****

' copy historical residuals into series whose names have _err suffixes
smpl %residstart %residend
copy *_a *_err

' use vinfo table to create list/group of equations to receive shocks
%tmp = " "
for !i = 1 to vinfo_size
    %vname = @word(vinfo_vname,!i)
    %stoch = @word(vinfo_stoch,!i)
    if %stoch <> "NO" then

```

```

        %tmp = %tmp + " " + %vname
    endif
next
group shock {%tmp}

' demean historical residuals and store them in a matrix

smpl %residstart %residend
%error_names = " "
for !i = 1 to shock.@count
    %temp = shock.@seriesname(!i) + "_err"
    scalar mm = @mean({%temp})
    series {%temp} = {%temp} - mm
    %error_names = %error_names + " " + %temp
next

group errors {%error_names}
smpl %residstart %residend
stom(errors,errorformat)

' create table of error statistics
!nrows = 3 + errors.@count
!ncols = 3
table(!nrows,!ncols) error_tab
error_tab.setjust(r1c1:r{!nrows}c1) left
error_tab.setwidth(1) 20
error_tab(1,1) = "error"
error_tab(1,2) = "mean"
error_tab(1,3) = "std-dev"
smpl %residstart %residend
for !i = 1 to errors.@count
    series tseries = errors(!i)
    error_tab(!i+3,1) = errors.@seriesname(!i)
    error_tab(!i+3,2) = @mean(tseries)
    error_tab(!i+3,3) = @stdev(tseries)
next

' miscellaneous

smpl %simstart %simend
scalar nqtrs = @obssmpl
scalar nrepl = {%nsims}
scalar nsims = {%nsims}
scalar nerrors = @rows(errorformat)
scalar bbbb = nqtrs-nerrors

```

```

call groupnew("shock","_aerr")

group track {%dbout_series}
call groupnames2string("track",%tracknames)

' for tracked variables, set up matrices to hold stochastic results
for !i = 1 to track.@count
    %temp = track.@seriesname(!i)
    matrix(nqtrs,nrepl) {%temp}_mat
next

' *****
' Stochastic sims
' *****

%sufstoch = "_1"
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufstoch}) "stoch sims"

' *****
' stochastic simulation loop (sims are run one at a time)

smpl %simstart %simend
for !i = 1 to nrepl
    statusline running stochastic sim number !i
    ' draw nqtrs random rows from the matrix of historical errors,
    ' damp the shocks in the first drawn row, and load the shocks
    ' into the respective _aerr error series
    matrix stocherrors = @resample(errormat,bbbb,{%errorblock})
    for !j = 1 to @columns(stocherrors)
        stocherrors(1,!j) = @val(%q1_shock_damp) * stocherrors(1,!j)
    next
    mtos(stocherrors,shock_aerr)
    {%varmod}.solve
' store solution values
for !j = 1 to track.@count
    %temp = track.@seriesname(!j)
    %temp1 = %temp + "_mat"
    stom({%temp}{%sufstoch},tmp)
    colplace({%temp1},tmp,!i)
next
next

' *****
' Statistics

```

```

' *****

statusline computing statistics

smpl %simstart %simend
!index = 2
series year = @year
series quarter = @quarter
alpha yyyyqq = @str(year) + "Q" + @str(quarter)
!lqtr = @dtoo(%simstart) - 1
!nstats = 8

'create a summary table in which to store key results

call tableform("summary_tab","100")

' loop over each tracked variable,
for !ii1 = 1 to track.@count
    %trkname = track.@seriesname(!ii1)
' compute statistics
    call makestats(%trkname)

' load statistics into variable-specific table
    %tabname = %trkname + "_tab"
    call tableform(%tabname,@str(nqtrs+2))
    for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
        {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,1) = yyyyqq(!lqtr + !ii2)
        for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats
            {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3+1) = {%trkname}_stats(!ii2,!ii3)
        next
    next

' load statistics for each q4 observation into summary table
    !index = !index + 1
    summary_tab(!index,1)= %trkname
    !index = !index + 1
    for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
        if quarter(!lqtr+!ii2) = 4 then
            for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats + 1
                summary_tab(!index,!ii3) = {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3)
            next
            !index = !index + 1
        endif
    next

' make graph showing 70 and 90 percent bands

```

```

graph {%trkname}_graph.band {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
      {%trkname}_hi70 {%trkname}_base
{%trkname}_graph.addtext(t) %trkname
{%trkname}_graph.options size(6,4.5)

next

' *****
' summary graph

lur_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
rff_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
picx4_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Core Inflation Rate
anngr_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Real GDP Growth Rate
lur_graph.legend -display
rff_graph.legend -display
picx4_graph.legend -display
anngr_graph.legend -display

graph summary_graph.merge lur_graph rff_graph picx4_graph anngr_graph
summary_graph.legend -display
summary_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Stochastic Simulations\r(70 and 9
show summary_graph

' *****
' summary spool
spool results
summary_tab.deleterow(!index) 100
results.append summary_tab
results.append summary_graph
results.append error_tab
results.display

```

Uses dbopen 217a, dfpex 218, dmpex 218, dmpintay 218, dmpstb 218, dmptr 218, dmptrsh 218, drstar 218, fetch 217a, group2zero 89a, groupnames2string 89b, groupnew 90, hggdp 218, interp.lin 91, ld\_frbus.cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus.eqs 178b 179, ld\_varinfo 192 193, left 218, lur 218, makestats 207, master\_library 208a, picnia 218, picx4 218, picxfe 218, rff 218, rffe 218, rffintay 218, rffmin 218, set\_fp 92, set\_mp 93, solve 217a, stoch 217b, tableform 206b, varinfo 217b, vinfo\_stoch 217b, vinfo\_vname 217b, vname 217b, wfcreate 217a, xgap 218, xgap2 218, and xgdp 218.

## Chapter 3

# Model Consistent Expectation Solve Package

### 3.1 example1 program

```
49  <mce example1 49>≡ (213a)
    ' This example illustrates:
    '
    ' - The automated approach to constructing the two operational
    '   models
    ' - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
    '   file whose lines are executed from within the call to
    '   mce_run
    ' - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
    '   scenario alias within the call to mce_run
    ' - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
    '   for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
    '   lag is one period

    '*****
    '*****
    '*****
    ' Section 1:  Workfile, model name, simulation range

    include  mce_solve_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "2000q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
```

```

' Model name
  %mod = "simple"

' Simulation range
  %simstart = "2001q1"
  %simend = "2025q4"

' *****
' *****
' *****
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data

' equations

model {%mod}
{%mod}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap
{%mod}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
{%mod}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf

' coefficients

coef(2) cy
cy.fill .50, -.02
coef(2) cp
cp.fill .50, .02
coef(3) cr
cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5

' set all data to zero
smpl @all
%vars = {%mod}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series {%tmp} = 0
next

' *****
' *****
' *****
' Section 3: Simulation

text shock1

```



```
shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1

%mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
show mce_sim_spool_1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1
```

Uses `mce_run` 97, `mce_solve_library` 209 214b, and `wfcreate` 217a.

## 3.2 example2 program

```

52  <mce example2 52>≡ (213b)
    ' This example illustrates:
    '
    '   - A manual approach to constructing the two operational
    '     models that mimics what the automated approach does
    '   - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
    '     file whose lines are executed from within the call to
    '     mce_run
    '   - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
    '     scenario alias within the call to mce_run
    '   - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
    '     for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
    '     lag is one period

    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 1:  Workfile, model name, simulation range

    include  mce_solve_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "2000q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

    ' Model names
    %modb = "simpleb"
    %modf = "simplef"

    ' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2001q1"
    %simend = "2025q4"

    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 2:  Model, coefficients, and data

    ' equations in backward-looking model

    model {%modb}

```

```

{%modb}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
{%modb}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
{%modb}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)

' equations in expectations errors model

model {%modf}
{%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
{%modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)

' coefficients

coef(2) cy
cy.fill .50, -.02
coef(2) cp
cp.fill .50, .02
coef(3) cr
cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5

' set all data to zero
smpl @all
%vars = {%modb}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series {%tmp} = 0
next
%vars = {%modf}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series {%tmp} = 0
next

' declare mce variables and instruments
%instrus = "zpinf zygap"
%errs = "ezpinf ezygap"

' *****
' *****
' *****

' Section 3: Simulation

text shock1
shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1

```

```
%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
show mce_sim_spool_1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1
```

Uses `mce_run` 97, `mce_solve_library` 209 214b, and `wfcreate` 217a.

### 3.3 example3 program

```

55  <mce example3 55>≡ (213c)
    ' This example illustrates:
    '
    ' - Another manual approach to constructing the two operational
    '   models that introduces new endogenous variables for the
    '   expectations leads along with simple equations for the new
    '   endogenous variables.
    ' - The MCE instruments are the add factors on the equations for
    '   the new endogenous variables; this circumstance requires that
    '   add factors be assigned to the operational models prior to
    '   the call to mce_run.
    ' - The option of defining the multiplier shock in commands that
    '   are executed prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual
    '   approach is used.
    ' - The option of declaring model scenarios and the scenario
    '   scenario alias prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual
    '   approach is used.
    ' - The model no longer satisfies the conditions for which the
    '   "jinit=linear" option of the "newton" algorithm is designed.
    '   This example uses "jinit=interp(4)" to specify a
    '   particular approximate Jacobian.
    '
    ' - This example runs three simulations. In the second and third
    '   simulations, the assignment of null strings to the first two
    '   arguments of the mce_run subroutine causes the simulations to be
    '   run with the same internal models and algorithm (including
    '   the Newton MCE Jacobian) that were created or declared in the
    '   first simulation.

    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range

    include mce_solve_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "2000q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

    ' Model names
    %modb = "simpleb"

```

```

%modf = "simplef"

' Simulation range
%simstart = "2001q1"
%simend = "2025q4"

'*****
'*****
'*****
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data

' equations in backward-looking model

model {%modb}
{%modb}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
{%modb}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
{%modb}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
{%modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
{%modb}.append zygap = @movav(ygap(-1),4)

' equations in expectations errors model

model {%modf}
{%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
{%modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)

' coefficients

coef(2) cy
cy.fill .50, -.02
coef(2) cp
cp.fill .50, .02
coef(3) cr
cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5

' set all data to zero
smpl @all
%vars = {%modb}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
    %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
    series {%tmp} = 0
next
%vars = {%modf}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
    %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)

```

```

        series {%tmp} = 0
    next

' declare mce variables and instruments
%instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
%errs = "ezpinf ezygap"

' assign tracking add factors
smpl %simstart %simend
{%modb}.addassign @all
{%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%modf}.addassign @all
{%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' *****
' *****
' Section 3: Simulations

%sufm = "_1"
{%modb}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
{%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"

' Sim 1: interest rate shock

smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
rate_a = rate_a + 1

%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
%aopts = "jinit=interp(4)"
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
rate_a = rate_a - 1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1

' Sim 2: output gap shock

```

```

smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
ygap_a = ygap_a + 1

%mopts = ""
%aopts = ""
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
ygap_a = ygap_a - 1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr2.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
gr2.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive output gap shock"
show gr2

' Sim 3: inflation shock

smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
pinf_a = pinf_a + 1

%mopts = ""
%aopts = ""
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
pinf_a = pinf_a - 1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr3.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
gr3.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive inflation shock"
show gr3

```

Uses mce\_run 97, mce.solve.library 209 214b, and wfcreate 217a.



### 3.4 example4 program

```

59  <mce example4 59>≡ (213d)
    ' This example illustrates:
    '
    '   - The simulation of a nonlinear model (zero bound imposed)
    '     (because the baseline data is set to zero; the zero-bound
    '       is set illustratively to -1)
    '   - The use of the qnewton algorithm
    '
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 1:  Workfile, model name, simulation range
    '
    ' include  mce_solve_library
    '
    ' Workfile
    ' %wfstart = "2000q1"
    ' %wfend = "2100q4"
    ' %mainpage = "main"
    ' wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
    '
    ' Model names
    ' %modb = "simpleb"
    ' %modf = "simplef"
    '
    ' Simulation range
    ' %simstart = "2001q1"
    ' %simend = "2025q4"
    '
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 2:  Model, coefficients, and data
    '
    ' equations in backward-looking model
    '
    ' model {%modb}
    ' {%modb}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
    ' {%modb}.append rate_u = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
    ' {%modb}.append rate = @recode( rate_u>rate_min,rate_u,rate_min)
    ' {%modb}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
    ' {%modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
    ' {%modb}.append zygap = @movav(ygap(-1),4)

```

```

' equations in expectations errors model

model {%modf}
{%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
{%modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)

' coefficients

coef(2) cy
cy.fill .50, -.02
coef(2) cp
cp.fill .50, .02
coef(3) cr
cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5

' set all data to zero
smpl @all
%vars = {%modb}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
    %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
    series {%tmp} = 0
next
%vars = {%modf}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
    %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
    series {%tmp} = 0
next

' declare mce variables and instruments
%instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
%errs = "ezpinf ezygap"

' assign tracking add factors
smpl %simstart %simend
{%modb}.addassign @all
{%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
{%modf}.addassign @all
{%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' *****
' *****
' Section 3: Simulation

%zb = "yes"

```

```

%sufm = "_1"
{%modb}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
{%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"

if %zb = "yes" then
    smpl @all
    rate_min = -1
else
    rate_min = -9999
endif

smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
ygap_a = ygap_a - 5

%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
%aopts = "meth=qnewton"
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
tic
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
scalar elapsed = @toc
show elapsed

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
%title = "Negative Output Shock"
if %zb = "yes" then
    %title = %title + "\r(zero bound imposed)"
else
    %title = %title + "\r(zero bound not imposed)"
endif
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
show gr1

```

Uses mce\_run 97, mce.solve.library 209 214b, and wfcreate 217a.

### 3.5 example5 program

```

62  <mce example5 62>≡ (214a)
    ' This example illustrates the two optimal policy simulation types
    '
    ' - Simulate the effects of a positive shock to the output gap
    '   using sequentially
    '
    '   (a) the model's interest rate rule
    '
    '   (b) the opt simulation type to find the optimal interest rate
    '       path under commitment
    '
    '   (c) the opttc simulation type to find the optimal time-consistent
    '       or discretionary interest rate path; note that the solution in
    '       this case is only approximate
    '
    '   In both (b) and (c) the policy instrument is the residual of
    '       the interest rule
    '
    ' - The illustrative loss function penalizes equally weighted,
    '     discounted, squared deviations of the output gap,
    '     inflation, and the first difference of the interest rate.
    '
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' *****
    ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range

    include mce_solve_library

    ' Workfile
    %wfstart = "2000q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

    ' Model name
    %mod = "simple"

    ' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2001q1"
    %simend = "2025q4"

    ' *****

```

```

'*****
'*****
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data

' equations

model {%mod}
{%mod}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap
{%mod}.append rate - rate_aerr = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
{%mod}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf(1))
{%mod}.append drate = rate - rate(-1)

' coefficients

coef(2) cy
cy.fill .50, -.02
coef(2) cp
cp.fill .50, .02
coef(3) cr
cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5

' set all data to zero
smpl @all
%vars = {%mod}.@varlist
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
    %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
    series {%tmp} = 0
next

'*****
'*****
'*****
' Section 3: Optimal policy setup

' targets, instruments
group opt_instrus rate_aerr
group opt_targs pinf ygap drate

' desired target trajectories
smpl @all
series pinf_t = 0
series ygap_t = 0
series drate_t = 0

' loss function weights

```

```

%discount = ".99"
%y_weight = "1.0"
%p_weight = "1.0"
%r_weight = "1.0"
smpl @all
series ygap_w = @val(%y_weight)
series pinf_w = @val(%p_weight)
series drate_w = @val(%r_weight)
!discount = @val(%discount)
smpl %simstart+1 %simend
ygap_w = !discount * ygap_w(-1)
pinf_w = !discount * pinf_w(-1)
drate_w = !discount * drate_w(-1)

'*****
'*****
'*****
' Section 3: Simulations

text shock1
shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
shock1.append series ygap_a = ygap_a + 3

' run the simulation using the monetary policy rule

%mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type= single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)

smpl @all
series rate_rule = rate_1
series pinf_rule = pinf_1
series ygap_rule = ygap_1

' run the simulation using opt

%mopts = ""
%aopts = ""
%sopts = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)

```

```

smpl @all
series rate_opt = rate_1
series pinf_opt = pinf_1
series ygap_opt = ygap_1

' run the simulation using opttc

%mopts = ""
%aopts = ""
%sopts = "type=opttc,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)

smpl @all
series rate_opttc = rate_1
series pinf_opttc = pinf_1
series ygap_opttc = ygap_1

'graph

smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
series zero = 0
graph gr1.line zero rate_rule rate_opt rate_opttc
graph gr2.line zero pinf_rule pinf_opt pinf_opttc
graph gr3.line zero ygap_rule ygap_opt ygap_opttc
graph gr4.merge gr1 gr2 gr3
%title = "Effects of Positive Output Shock Under Three Policy Responses"
%title = %title + "\r1.  An inertial interest rate rule (_rule)"
%title = %title + "\r2.  Optimal policy under commitment (_opt)"
%title = %title + "\r3.  Optimal time-consistent policy (_opttc)"
gr4.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
show gr4

```

Uses mce\_run 97, mce\_solve\_library 209 214b, and wfcreate 217a.





## Chapter 4

# State Space Package

### 4.1 Estimate Model

```
67  <estimation model 67>≡ (214e)
    ' Program to estimate the FRB/US state-space model and
    ' generate estimates of model states.

    ' Subroutines:
    '   To transform data
    include "./data_transformations"

    '   To estimate the model
    include "./estimation_code"
    include "./initial_values"

    close @all
    wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4

    %estend      = "2013q4"
    %eststart    = "1963q2"
    %datastart   = "1949q1"

    sample estsample %eststart %estend
    sample datasample %datastart %estend
    %datasmpl = %datastart + " " + %estend
    %modname = "ss_model"
```

```

'*****
' Retrieve variables from the database

' Definitions of series in database
'   See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions

' XGDP   - GDP, cw 2009$
' XGDPN  - GDP
' XB     - BLS Business output, 2009$
' XBN    - BLS Business output
' XGDIN  - GDI

' PGDP   - Price index for GDP, cw
' PXB    - BLS Business price

' LEP    - Employment in business sector (employee and self-employed)
' LHP    - Aggregate labor hours, business sector (employee and self-employed)
' LUR    - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
' LF     - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
' N16    - Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)

' KS     - Capital services, 2009 $
' LQUALT - Labor quality, trend level
' VEOA   - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock

' PCXFE  - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (N1
' PCER   - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to I

' PMO    - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
' UCES   - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' EMON   - Imports of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN  - Nominal Absorption
' PTR    - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)

%dbin = "state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as dbin

string varlist = " xgdpn xbn pgdp pxb pcxfe pcer xgdp xb lep uces emon xgden ptr "
varlist = varlist + " ks lqualt veoa lhp lur lf n16 pmo xgdin "

fetch(d=dbin) {varlist}

'*****

```

```

' Make model observable series, set priors

smpl datasample

call data_transformations

'*****
' Specify and estimate model, save for re-use

smpl estsample

statusline Estimating model
call ss_estimation

{%modname}.makefilter saved_results

'*****
' Create states

{%modname}.makestates(t=pred) *_prs      ' one-step ahead state predictions
{%modname}.makestates(t=filt) *_1        ' filter states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smooth) *_2      ' smoothed states
{%modname}.makestates(t=disturb) *err    ' estimate of the disturbances
{%modname}.makestates(t=filtse) *se      ' RMSE of the filtered states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2   ' RMSE of the smoothed states

{%modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr      ' one-step ahead signal predictions
{%modname}.makesignals(t=resid) *_res    ' error in one-step ahead signal predictions
{%modname}.makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres ' standardized one-step ahead prediction residual

'*****
' Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics

series xbt = exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) + _
                0.275*lkls + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa + lpop)/100)
series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
series hqlww = gtw_2
series huxb = gtotfactor_2
series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)

```

```

series uxbt    = exp(totfactor_2/100)
series xgdpt   = xbt * uxbt
series xgdo    = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt

```

```

wfsave saved_results_new

```

Defines:

`saved_results_new`, never used.

Uses `close` 217a, `data_transformations` 214c, `dbopen` 217a, `emon` 218, `estimation_code` 214d, `ex` 218, `fetch` 217a, `hmfpt` 218, `hqlfpr` 218, `hqlww` 218, `huxb` 218, `initial_values` 81 215b, `ks` 218, `lep` 218, `leppot` 218, `lf` 218, `lhp` 218, `lqualt` 218, `lur` 218, `lurnat` 218, `n16` 218, `pcer` 218, `pcxfe` 218, `pgdp` 218, `pmo` 218, `ptr` 218, `pxb` 218, `qlfpr` 218, `qlww` 218, `sector` 217b, `ss_estimation` 74, `uces` 218, `uxbt` 218, `veoa` 218, `wfcreate` 217a, `wfsave` 217a, `xb` 218, `xbn` 218, `xbt` 218, `xgden` 218, `xgdin` 218, `xgdo` 218, `xgdp` 218, `xgdpn` 218, and `xgdpt` 218.

## 4.2 Data Transformations

```

71  <data transformations 71>≡ (214c)
    subroutine data_transformations()

      ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
      ' transform raw data from EViews database to observables
      ' used in the estimation of the state-space model.

      ' 1. Data transformations

      series lpop = 100*log(n16)

      'Business - product side
      series nbp = xbn
      series bp = log(xb)*100 -lpop

      'GDP
      series gdp = log(xgdp)*100 -lpop

      'Buseness - income side
      series dsnst_q = xgdpn - xgdin
      series nbi = nbp - dsnst_q
      series rbi = nbi/(pxb/100)
      series bi = log(rbi)*100 -lpop

      ' Employment Business sector
      series eb = log(lep)*100 - lpop

      ' Workweek
      series hb = log(lhp)*100 - lpop
      series bwv = hb - eb

      ' Employment Rate
      series erate = 100*log((100-lur)/100)

      ' Participation Rate
      series lfpr = 100*log(lf/n16)

      ' Variables for TMFP:
      series lks = 100*log(ks) - lpop
      series llqualt = 100*log(lqualt)
      series lveoa = 100*log(veoa)

      ' Series for the price equation
      series clpcex = @pca(pcxfe)

```

```

series engylag_pcex = 0.5*(uces(-1)+uces(-2))*@pca(pcer(-1))
series sw_coreimp_pcex = 0.5*((emon/xgden)+(emon(-1)/xgden(-1)))*@pca(pmo/pcxfe)
series dum84 = @year>=1985
series frzbulg = 0      ''' Nixon wage-price control programs
smpl 1971q3 1974q1
frzbulg = 1
smpl 1974q2 1974q4
frzbulg = -3.666

' For the output-sector ratio, we use the median unbiased approach of Stock
' and Watson (1998). Thus, tau_oti is the ratio of the variances of the level
' and drift shocks.

scalar tau_oti = .033260  ' modifier for the drift totfactor (OSR*) error term

'*****

' 2. Prior starting values for states.

'   For mean zero level states, set prior to zero.
'   For other level states, set prior to a data-based
'       value near the start of the sample.
'   For most drift terms, set prior to zero.
'       Exception is trend MFP, set equal to sample average.

' Cycle
scalar   icycle =      0
scalar   icycle1 =     0
scalar   icycle2 =     0

' Measurement error
scalar   ie3p =      0
scalar   ie3i =      0

' Levels of trends
scalar   itotfactor =      @elem(gdp,%eststart) - @elem(bp,%eststart)
scalar   itmfp =      .965*(@elem(bp,%eststart) - 0.725*(@elem(eb,%eststart)
                        + @elem(bww,%eststart)) - 0.275*@elem(lks,%eststart)
                        - 0.725*@elem(llqualt,%eststart) -
                        - (.035/.965)*@elem(lveoa,%eststart))

scalar   itww =      @elem(bww,%eststart)
scalar   ithtfactor =      @elem(eb,%eststart) - @elem(erate,%eststart) -
                        - @elem(lfpr,%eststart)

```

```

scalar      itlfpr =                @elem(lfpr,%eststart)
scalar      iterate =               @elem(erate,%eststart)

' Initial drift terms
scalar      igtotfactor =           0.0
scalar      igtmfp =                 1.7
scalar      igtww =                  0.0
scalar      igthtfactor =           0.0
scalar      igtlfpr =                0.0

scalar nstate = 25

' The mpriors *must* be in the same order as the states are in the model object
vector(nstate) mpriors
mpriors.fill 0, ie3p, ie3i, 0, 0, _
              0, 0, icycle, icycle1, icycle2, _
              itotfactor, igtotfactor, itmfp, igtmfp, itww, _
              itww, igtww, ithtfactor, ithtfactor, igthtfactor, _
              itlfpr, itlfpr, igtlfpr, iterate, iterate

' Set starting values for variance priors
'   Variance priors set at a high value. In estimation, variance
'   drops sharply in early periods of estimation sample.

sym(nstate) vpriors
for !d = 1 to nstate
    vpriors(!d, !d) = 3
next

' A tighter prior for drift variances,
vpriors(12,12) = 1    ' igtotfactor
vpriors(14,14) = 1    ' igtmfp
vpriors(17,17) = 1    ' igtww
vpriors(20,20) = 1    ' igthtfactor

endsub

Uses data_transformations 214c, emon 218, ks 218, lep 218, lf 218, lfpr 218, lhp 218,
lqualt 218, lur 218, n16 218, pcer 218, pcxfe 218, pmo 218, pxb 218, sector 217b,
uces 218, veoa 218, xb 218, xbn 218, xgden 218, xgdin 218, xgdp 218, and xgdpn 218.

```

### 4.3 Estimation Code

```

74  <estimation code 74>≡ (214d)
    subroutine ss_estimation()

    ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
    ' estimate the model parameters.

    '*****

    ' 1. Starting values for parameters.

    ' All of the coefficients in equations appear as beta or phi.
    ' Note that some values that are set here are hard coded in the estimation code below

    call initial_values

    '*****
    ' Model

    sspace {%modname} ' Declare a new state-space model object

    ' 2. Output equations.

    ' In the output equations, trend output is related to the capital stock, energy inter
    ' and trends for labor input using a production function. The parameters of the pro
    ' function are hard-coded to the values in the FRB/US model.

    ' GDP observable
    {%modname}.append @signal gdp = totfactor + tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtf
    + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
    + cycle + beta(11)*beta(6) + beta(11)*e3p + rexo
    {%modname}.append @state rexo = [var=0.0000001^2]

    ' Buisines sector product-side observable
    {%modname}.append @signal bp = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tww)
    + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
    + beta(10)*cycle + beta(6) + e3p
    {%modname}.append @state e3p = beta(602)*e3p(-1) + re3p
    {%modname}.append @ename re3p 'business prod error
    {%modname}.append @evar var(re3p) = (beta(125)^2)

    ' Business sector income-side observable
    {%modname}.append @signal bi = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tw
    + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
    + beta(10)*cycle - beta(6) + e3i

```



```

{%modname}.append @state e3i =    beta(602)*e3i(-1) + re3i
{%modname}.append @ename re3i 'business income error
{%modname}.append @evar var(re3i) =    (beta(126)^2)

' 3. Labor equations.

' Workweek observable
' To make this equation more consistent with the FRB/US workweek specification,
' a contemporaneous change in the cycle is included as well as the level of the
' cycle. In addition, the coefficient on the lagged gap term in this equation is
' hard-coded at a value similar to that implicit in the FRB/US model.

{%modname}.append @signal bww =    tww _
      + phi(20)*(cycle-cycle1) _
      + phi(22)*cycle1 _
      + 0.82*(bww(-1)-tww1) _
      + eww
{%modname}.append @state eww =    [var=beta(104)^2]

' Employment observable
{%modname}.append @signal eb =    terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + _
      + phi(30)*cycle _
      + phi(31)*(eb(-1)-(terate1 + tlfpr1 +thtfactor1)) _
      + eeb
{%modname}.append @state eeb =    [var=beta(105)^2]

' Employment rate observable
{%modname}.append @signal erate =    terate + phi(50)*cycle _
      + phi(51)*(erate(-1)-terate1) _
      + eerate
{%modname}.append @state eerate =    [var=beta(106)^2]

' Labor force participation observable
{%modname}.append @signal lfpr =    tlfpr + phi(40)*cycle _
      + phi(41)*(lfpr(-1)-tlfpr1) _
      + elfpr
{%modname}.append @state elfpr =    [var=beta(107)^2]

' 4. Price observable
      {%modname}.append @ename ec
      {%modname}.append @evar var(ec) =    (beta(109)^2)
      {%modname}.append @signal c1pcex = _
      beta(401)*c1pcex(-1) + (1-beta(401))*(ptr(-1)+.1) _
+ beta(404)*(((.50*cycle + .33*cycle1 + .17*cycle2 )) ) _
      + beta(405)*@movav(engylag_pcex(-1),6) _
      + beta(406)*@movav(dum84*engylag_pcex(-1),6) _

```

```

+ beta(407)*frzbulg _
+ beta(408)*sw_coreimp_pcex + beta(409)*sw_coreimp_pcex(-1) _
+ ec

' 5. State equations

' Cycle state
{%modname}.append @state cycle = beta(1)*cycle(-1) + beta(2)*cycle1(-1) + ecycle
{%modname}.append @state cycle1 = cycle(-1)
{%modname}.append @state cycle2 = cycle1(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename ecycle
{%modname}.append @evar var(ecycle) = (beta(111)^2)

' Trends

' Totfactor = OSR* in F.R.(2011)
' tau_oti is taken from FR(2011)
{%modname}.append @state totfactor = totfactor(-1) + 0.25*.95*(gtotfactor(-1) ) + 0.25*
                                     etotfactor + 0.25*egtotfactor
{%modname}.append @state gtotfactor = .95*gtotfactor(-1) + .05*beta(213) + egtotfactor
{%modname}.append @ename etotfactor
{%modname}.append @evar var(etotfactor) = (beta(112)^2)
{%modname}.append @ename egtotfactor
{%modname}.append @evar var(egtotfactor) = (4*((tau_oti))*beta(112))^2

' Multi-Factor Productivity (OPH*)
{%modname}.append @state tmfp = tmfp(-1) + etmfp + 0.25*.95*(gtmfp(-1)) + 0.25*0.05*
{%modname}.append @state gtmfp = 0.95*gtmfp(-1) + 0.05*beta(214) + egtmfp
{%modname}.append @ename etmfp
{%modname}.append @evar var(etmfp) = beta(114)^2
{%modname}.append @ename egtmfp
{%modname}.append @evar var(egtmfp) = 0.14^2 ' beta(115)^2

' For the workweek, employment-sector ratio, and LFPR, the level variances are ha
' This hard-coding is done for convenience in production work. In particular, th
' values are close to the values these parameters take on when they are freely es
' However, the t-ratios for these parameters are not very high, and that imprecis
' to sluggish convergence; imposing these values shortens the time needed for est

' Workweek (WW*)
{%modname}.append @state tww = tww(-1) + 0.25*.95*(gtww(-1) ) + etww + 0.25*.05*beta
{%modname}.append @state tww1 = tww(-1)
{%modname}.append @state gtww = .95*gtww(-1) + .05*beta(216) + egtww
{%modname}.append @ename etww
{%modname}.append @ename egtww
{%modname}.append @evar var(etww) = 0.1^2

```

```

{%modname}.append @evar var(egttww) = beta(117)^2

' Employment Sector Ratio (ESR*)
{%modname}.append @state thtfactor = thtfactor(-1) + 0.25*.95*gtthtfactor(-1) + _
                                0.25*egthtfactor + ethtfactor
{%modname}.append @state thtfactor1 = thtfactor(-1)
{%modname}.append @state gtthtfactor = 0.95*gtthtfactor(-1) + egthtfactor
{%modname}.append @ename ethtfactor
{%modname}.append @evar var(ethtfactor) = .01^2 ' beta(118)^2
{%modname}.append @ename egthtfactor
{%modname}.append @evar var(egthtfactor) = (beta(119)^2)

' Labor Force Participation (LFPR*)
{%modname}.append @state tlfpr = tlfpr(-1) + 0.25*(.95*gtlfr(-1) + egtlfr) + etlfr
{%modname}.append @state tlfpr1 = tlfpr(-1)
{%modname}.append @state gtlfr = 0.95*gtlfr(-1) + egtlfr
{%modname}.append @ename etlfr
{%modname}.append @evar var(etlfr) = .05^2 ' beta(122)^2
{%modname}.append @ename egtlfr
{%modname}.append @evar var(egtlfpr) = beta(123)^2

' Employment Rate (ER*), no drift
{%modname}.append @state terate = terate(-1) + eterate
{%modname}.append @state terate1 = terate(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename eterate
{%modname}.append @evar var(eterate) = beta(124)^2

{%modname}.append @vprior vpriors

{%modname}.append @mprior mpriors

freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)

endsub

```

Defines:

ss\_estimation, used in chunk 67.

Uses close 217a, ec 218, initial\_values 81 215b, lfpr 218, ptr 218, sector 217b,  
and sspace 217a.

## 4.4 Supply Filter

```

78  <supply filter 78>≡ (215a)
    ' Program is part of the FRB/US state-space model package.
    ' frbus_supply_filter takes a previously estimated state-space model and
    ' generates estimates of model states.

    ' Subroutines:
    '   To transform data
    include "./data_transformations"

    close @all
    wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4

    %estend      = "2014q3"
    %eststart    = "1963q2"
    %datastart   = "1949q1"

    sample estsample %eststart %estend
    sample datasample %datastart %estend

    %modname = "ss_model"

    ' *****
    ' Retrieve variables from the database

    ' Definitions of series in database
    '   See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions

    ' XGDP    - GDP, cw 2009$
    ' XGDPN   - GDP
    ' XB      - BLS NFB output, 2009$
    ' XBN     - BLS NFB output
    ' XGDIN   - GDI

    ' PGDP    - Price index for GDP, cw
    ' PXB     - BLS NFB price

    ' LEP     - Employment in nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employed)
    ' LHP     - Aggregate labor hours, nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employed)
    ' LUR     - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
    ' LF      - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
    ' N16     - Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)

```

```

' KS      - Capital services, 2009 $
' LQUALT  - Labor quality, trend level
' VEOA    - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock

' PCXFE   - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (NIA def.)
' PCER    - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to PCXFE)

' PMO     - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
' UCES    - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' EMON    - Imports of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN   - Nominal Absorption
' PTR     - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)

```

```

smpl datasample
%dbin = "./state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as histdata
fetch(d=histdata) *

```

```

'*****
' Make model observable series, set priors

```

```

smpl datasample

```

```

call data_transformations

```

```

'*****
' Load saved model; run estimation step with previously estimated
' parameters as starting values (converges quickly).

```

```

smpl estsample

```

```

wfoopen saved_results
copy saved_results::untitled\saved_results kf_data::untitled\{%modname}
wfclose saved_results
freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)

```

```

'*****
' Create states

```

```

{%modname}.makestates(t=pred) *_prs      ' one-step ahead state predictions
{%modname}.makestates(t=filt) *_1        ' filter states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smooth) *_2      ' smoothed states
{%modname}.makestates(t=disturb) *err    ' estimate of the disturbances

```

```

{%modname}.makestates(t=filtse) *se      ' RMSE of the filtered states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2   ' RMSE of the smoothed states

{%modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr      ' one-step ahead signal predictions
{%modname}.makesignals(t=resid) *_res    ' error in one-step ahead signal prediction
{%modname}.makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres ' standardized one-step ahead prediction

'*****
' Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics

series xbt = exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) +
                 0.275*lkls + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa + lpop)/100)
series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
series hqlww = gtww_2
series huxb = gtotfactor_2
series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)
series uxbt = exp(totfactor_2/100)
series xgdpt = xbt * uxbt
series xgdo = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt

```

Uses close 217a, data.transformations 214c, dbopen 217a, ex 218, fetch 217a,  
 frbus\_supply\_filter 215a, hmfpt 218, hqlfpr 218, hqlww 218, huxb 218, leppot 218,  
 lurnat 218, n16 218, qlfpr 218, qlww 218, sector 217b, uxbt 218, wfclose 217a,  
 wfcreate 217a, wfopen 217a, xbt 218, xgdo 218, and xgdpt 218.

## 4.5 Initial Values

81  $\langle initial\ values\ 81 \rangle \equiv$  (215b)  
 subroutine initial\_values

```

coef(703) beta
coef(60) phi
beta(1)      = 1.497516
beta(2)      = -0.540927
beta(213)    = -0.328852
beta(214)    = 1.061453
beta(216)    = -0.266658
beta(10)     = 1.325310
beta(401)    = 0.625693
beta(404)    = 0.090059
beta(405)    = 0.440360
beta(406)    = -0.324208
beta(407)    = -0.435237
beta(408)    = 0.293555
beta(409)    = 0.253904
beta(6)      = 0.331366
beta(602)    = 0.927692

phi(20)      = 0.301616
phi(22)      = 0.020651
phi(30)      = 0.452297
phi(31)      = 0.649965
phi(40)      = 0.042475
phi(41)      = 0.727876
phi(50)      = 0.299981
phi(51)      = 0.528947

beta(105)    = 0.176896
beta(106)    = 0.086226
beta(107)    = 0.210419
beta(104)    = 0.229143
beta(100)    = 0.000001
beta(109)    = 0.803236
beta(111)    = 0.566205
beta(119)    = 0.099423
beta(123)    = 0.129325
beta(115)    = 0.140001
beta(117)    = 0.081062
beta(124)    = 0.136532
beta(118)    = 0.010000
```

```
beta(122)      = 0.050000
beta(114)      = 0.107852
beta(112)      = 0.044151
beta(126)      = 0.476765
beta(125)      = 0.534807
beta(11) = 1/beta(10)
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`initial_values`, used in chunks 67, 74, and 176.



## Chapter 5

# Data Only Package



## Chapter 6

## Appendices



# Routine Libraries

## 6.1 Master Library

### 6.1.1 quarterly date string shift

```
87  <quarterly date string shift 87>≡ (208b)
    subroutine dateshift(string %indate, string %outdate, scalar qtrshift)

    ' this subroutine takes the quarterly date string in %indate (ie, "2001q1") and shifts
    ' it qtrshift quarters, returning the result in %outdate

    !dddd1 = @dateval(%indate,"yyyfq")
    !dddd2 = @dateadd(!dddd1,qtrshift,"q")
    %outdate = @datestr(!dddd2,"yyyfq")

    endsub
```

Defines:

**dateshift**, used in chunks 11, 23, 91, and 152.

### 6.1.2 copy series into group

```

88  <copy series into group 88>≡ (208b)
    subroutine group2group(string %fromgroup, string %togroup, string %to_type)

    ' copies a group of series into another group.
    '
    ' If %to_type = "suffix", then %togroup is interpreted as a suffix to be applied to
    ' %fromgroup and its series.
    '
    ' If %to_type = "prefix", then %togroup is interpreted as a prefix to be applied to
    ' %fromgroup and its series.
    '
    ' If %to_type = "group", the %togroup is interpreted as the name of a group that
    ' already exists.

    if %to_type = "group" then
        if {%fromgroup}.@count <> {%togroup}.@count then
            statusline ERROR in GROUP2GROUP:  the two groups do not contain the same number
        endif
        for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
            %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
            %tmp1 = {%togroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
            {%tmp1} = {%tmp}
        next
    endif

    if %to_type = "suffix" then
        %tmpa = " "
        %tmpb = %fromgroup + %togroup
        for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
            %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %togroup
            %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
            if @isobject(%tmp) then
                {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
            else
                series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
            endif
        next
        group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
    endif

    if %to_type = "prefix" then
        %tmpa = " "
        %tmpb = %togroup + %fromgroup
        for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count

```

```

    %tmp = %togroup + {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
    %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
    if @isobject(%tmp) then
        {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
    else
        series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
    endif
    next
    group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
endif

```

endsub

Defines:

group2group, never used.

### 6.1.3 set group to zero

89a *<set group to zero 89a>*≡ (208b)

```

    subroutine group2zero(string %group)

    ' set all series in an existin %group to zero

    for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
        %tmp = {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
        {%tmp} = 0
    next

```

endsub

Defines:

group2zero, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, and 203.

### 6.1.4 names of all series in group

89b *<names of all series in group 89b>*≡ (208b)

```

    subroutine groupnames2string(string %group, string %groupnames)

    ' creates a string of the names of all the series in a group

    %groupnames = " "
    for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
        %groupnames = %groupnames + " " + {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
    next

```

endsub

Defines:

groupnames2string, used in chunk 40.

### 6.1.5 create new group

```

90  <create new group 90>≡ (208b)
    subroutine groupnew(string %fromgroup, string %to)

    ' Creates a new group. The names of the new group and associated series are built up
    ' from %fromgroup with %to as a suffix. Series that do not yet exist are set to zero

    %tmpa = " "
    %tmpb = %fromgroup + %to
    for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
        %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %to
        %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
        if @isobject(%tmp) <> 1 then
            series {%tmp} = 0
        endif
    next
    group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}

    endsub

```

Defines:

**groupnew**, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, and 203.



### 6.1.6 interpolate unavailable observations

```

91  <interpolate unavailable observations 91>≡ (208b)
    subroutine interp_lin(string %series_in, string %series_out, string %substart, string %subend)

    ' Subroutine that replaces NA values in a series with
    ' interpolated observations.  NA values at the beginning or end of the series are
    ' replaced with the first or last non-NA value.

    smpl %substart %subend

    ' *****
    ' check that series is not all NAs
    series tmp_check = ({%series_in} = NA)
    if @sum(tmp_check) = @obssmpl then
        statusline Error in interp_lin subroutine:  interpolation cannot be performed because series
        stop
    endif

    series tmp_ser = ({%series_in}<>NA)
    series tmp_id = @cumsum(tmp_ser)
    series tmp_next = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id(-1))
    series tmp_prev = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id)

    ' *****
    ' check for NAs at either beginning or end of sample

    ' test for NAs at beginning of sample
    series tmp_naprev = (tmp_prev = NA)
    !flag_prev = @max(tmp_naprev)
    if !flag_prev = 1 then
        'at this point, tmp_next will have an undesired NA in its first observation;
        'change it to equal its second observation
        smpl %substart %substart
        call dateshift(%substart,%nextqtr,1)
        tmp_next = @elem(tmp_next,%nextqtr)
        smpl %substart %subend if (tmp_prev = NA)
        tmp_prev = tmp_next
        smpl %substart %subend
    endif

    ' test for NAs at end of sample
    series tmp_nanext = (tmp_next = NA)
    !flag_next = @max(tmp_nanext)
    if !flag_next = 1 then
        smpl %substart %subend if (tmp_next = NA)

```

```

    tmp_next = tmp_prev
    smpl %substart %subend
    endif

    ' *****
    series tmp_lambda = (@obsid-@minsby(@obsid,tmp_id))/@sumsby(1,tmp_id)
    series {%series_out} = tmp_lambda*tmp_next + (1-tmp_lambda)*tmp_prev

    delete tmp_ser tmp_prev tmp_next tmp_lambda tmp_id tmp_nanext tmp_naprev tmp_check

endsub
Defines:
    interp_lin, used in chunk 40.
Uses dateshift 87.

```

### 6.1.7 set fiscal policy option

```

92  <set fiscal policy option 92>≡ (208b)
    subroutine set_fp(string dfpxxx)

        %policy_options = "dfpex dfpsrp dfpdbl"
        %dfpxxx = @lower(dfpxxx)
        %dfpxxx = @replace(%dfpxxx," ","")

        !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dfpxxx)
        if !kz > 0 then
            for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
                %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
                if !izzz = !kz then
                    series {%ppp} = 1
                else
                    series {%ppp} = 0
                endif
            next
        else
            %err = %dfpxxx + " is not a valid fiscal policy option; execution terminated"
            @uiprompt(%err)
            stop
        endif

    endsub
Defines:
    set_fp, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.
Uses dfpdbl 218, dfpex 218, and dfpsrp 218.

```

### 6.1.8 set monetary policy option

```

93  <set monetary policy option 93>≡ (208b)
    subroutine set_mp(string dmpxxx)

        %policy_options = "dmpex dmprr dmptay dmptlr dmpintay dmpalt dmpgen"
        %dmpxxx = @lower(dmpxxx)
        %dmpxxx = @replace(%dmpxxx," ","")

        !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dmpxxx)
        if !kz > 0 then
            for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
                %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
                if !izzz = !kz then
                    series {%ppp} = 1
                else
                    series {%ppp} = 0
                endif
            next
        else
            %err = %dmpxxx + " is not a valid monetary policy option; execution terminated"
            @uiprompt(%err)
            stop
        endif

    endsub

Defines:
    set_mp, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.
Uses dmpalt 218, dmpex 218, dmpgen 218, dmpintay 218, dmprr 218, dmptay 218,
and dmptlr 218.

```

### 6.1.9 set monetary policy fed funds rate

94     $\langle$ *set monetary policy fed funds rate* 94 $\rangle \equiv$  (208b)  
       subroutine set\_mpvars2rff  
           rfffix = rff  
           rfftay = rffe  
           rfftlr = rffe  
           rffalt = rff  
           rffintay = rffe  
           rffgen = rffe  
           rrfix = rffe - @movav(picxfe,4)

      endsub

Defines:

      set\_mpvars2rff, never used.

Uses picxfe 218, rff 218, rffalt 218, rffe 218, rfffix 218, rffgen 218, rffintay 218,  
       rfftay 218, rfftlr 218, and rrfix 218.

## 6.2 mce solve library

### 6.2.1 mce solve library change history

```

95  <mce solve library change history 95>= (210)
    ' Changes (1/25/14)
    ,
    ' 1. Removed defaults from mce_load_frbus subroutine
    ,
    ' 2. Added make_frbus_mcevars subroutine
    ,
    ' Changes (1/22/14)
    ,
    ' 1. Added code so that the _$sufsim string variable is assigned the
    '     alias of the currently active scenario when the %mopts argument
    '     is a null string.
    ,
    ' 2. In subroutine mcz_sim, put the contents of string variable
    '     mcz_sim_options into another string, a change which for unknown
    '     reasons eliminates an unexplained Eviews shutdown when running
    '     a pair of simulations of which the first is type=single and the
    '     second is type=opt.

    ' Changes (1/8/14)
    ,
    ' 1. Added the "dontstop" option to the %sopt argument. When invoked,
    '     this option causes the evIEWS program that calls mce_run
    '     to continue executing when running a type=single simulation if
    '     (a) the solution iterations do not
    '     converge within the maximum number of permitted iterations or
    '     (b) the evIEWS solver generates an error when solving either
    '     the backward-looking or forward-looking models in subroutine
    '     mcz_solvit. In the case of nonconvergence the call to mce_run
    '     terminates with the string value %mce_finish = "no". In the
    '     case of a solver error, the call to mce_run terminates with the
    '     string value %mce_finish = "failed_solve". Otherwise,
    '     %mce_finish = "yes".
    ,
    ,
    ' Changes (2/21/12)
    ,
    ' 1. Fixed problem with code for unconstrained TC policy
    '     calculated via EViews matrices -- the solution at period t
    '     (t = 1, ... !ndrv) must go out through period
    '     the farthest period ever solved -- (!nevl + !ndrv - 1) --
    '     which requires that the opt derivative

```

```

'    matrix must span this many quarters.  The constrained TC
',
' 2. Wrote code for constrained TC policy in EViews when there is
'    a single instrument
',
' 3. Fixed code for constrained TC policy in R -- still need to do matlab

' Changes (2/16/12)
',
' 1. Fixed problem with constrained optimization when
'    number of evaluation periods is not the same as
'    the number of instrument periods
'    (subroutine mcz_opt_qp).  This undoes part of the
'    1/17/12 change #3
',
' Changes (2/13/12)
',
' 1. Added "d=" option for TC damping factor (!tcdamp)

' Changes (1/30/12)
',
' 1. Modified subroutine mca_opt_qp to set options in matlab
'    quadprog function call
',
' Changes (1/17/12)
',
' 1. Added new subroutine (mcz_opt_tc) and new simtype (opttc)
' 2. Added new keywords:  ideriv, for sopt string
'    /xopen, /xclose for R and matlab
' 3. Modified subroutine mcz_opt_qp so that the dimensions of the
'    initial and transformed constraint matrices are based on !ndrv not !nevl
' 4. Dropped the explicit optqp simtype
',

```

Uses make\_frbus\_mcevars 173, mce\_load\_frbus 169, mce\_run 97, mcz\_opt\_qp 147,  
 mcz\_opt\_tc 152, mcz\_sim 114, and mcz\_solvit 123.

## 6.2.2 run model consistent expectations

```

97  (run model consistent expectations 97)≡ (210)
    subroutine mce_run(string m_opts, string a_opts, string s_opts)

    ' Driver program

    %mcestart = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
    %mceend = @word(@pagesmpl,2)

    ' *****
    ' 1. Examine m_opts string (defines or creates models, mce errors and instruments)
    ' *****
    '
    ' Case 1: null string (ie, "")
    '      => use existing models whose names are contained in %$_mod_b and
    '           %$_mod_f; use existing objects $_mce_instrus
    '           and $_mce_errs.
    ' Case 2: string contains the keywords "create" and "mod=<modname>"
    '      => a model named <modname> is in the workfile and contains explicit
    '           leads; parse it to create the objects $_mod_b, $_mod_f,
    '           $_mce_instrus, and $_mce_errs
    ' Case 3: string contains the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_errs=", "mce_instrus=";
    '           or the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_vars="
    '      => each keyword must be assigned to a string variable, whose contents are
    '           used to define $_mod_b, $_mod_f, $_mce_errs, and
    '           $_mce_instrus

    if @isempty(m_opts) = 1 then
    ' *****
    ' case 1 code
    !m_case = 1
    !z1 = @isobject(%$_mod_b)
    !z2 = @isobject(%$_mod_f)
    !z3 = @isobject("$_mce_instrus")
    !z4 = @isobject("$_mce_errs")
    !zsum = !z1+!z2+!z3+!z4
    if !zsum <> 4 then
        %err = "When the first argument to mce_run is a null string, a previous call to "
        %err = %err + "mce_run must have placed the names of the backward and "
        %err = %err + "forward looking models, list of mce instruments names "
        %err = %err + "and list of mce error names in various strings; at least one "
        %err = %err + "these strings either does not exist or contains the name of "
        %err = %err + "an object that does not exist. Execution terminates."

```

```

    @uiprompt(%err)
    stop
  endif
  'find alias of active scenario
  %endog_active = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist("@active")
  %endog_actual = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist
  %word1_active = @word(%endog_active,1)
  %word1_actual = @word(%endog_actual,1)
  !a1 = @strlen(%word1_active)- @strlen(%word1_actual)
  string $_sufsim = @right(%word1_active,!a1)

  else
  m_opts = @lower(m_opts)
  m_opts = @replace(m_opts," ","")
  m_opts = @replace(m_opts,",",", ")
  m_opts = " " + m_opts + " "

  if @instr(m_opts,"create") and @instr(m_opts,"mod=") then
  ' *****
  ' case 2 code
  !m_case = 2
  call mcz_equalopt("mod",m_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %temp1 = @left(%temp,1)
    if %temp1 = "%" then
      %mod = @lower({%temp})
    else
      %mod = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_parsemod({%mod})
  endif
  else
  !z1 = @instr(m_opts,"mod_b=")
  !z2 = @instr(m_opts,"mod_f=")
  !z3 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_errs=")
  !z4 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_instrus=")
  !z5 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_vars=")
  !zsum1 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z3>0)+(!z4>0)
  !zsum2 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z5>0)
  if !zsum1 = 4 or !zsum2 = 3 then
  ' *****
  ' case 3 code
  !m_case = 3
  call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",m_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %temp = @lower({%temp})

```



```

        %$_mod_b = %temp
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        %$_mod_f = %temp
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("mce_errs",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group $_mce_errs {%temp}
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("mce_instrus",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group $_mce_instrus {%temp}
    endif

    else
' *****
' m_opt string does not conform to a valid case
    @uiprompt("first argument to subroutine mce_run is incorrectly specified")
    stop
    endif
endif
endif

if !m_case = 2 or !m_case = 3 then
    call mcz_hasopt("adds",m_opts)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        {%$_mod_b}.addassign @all
        {%$_mod_f}.addassign @all
    endif
    call mcz_hasopt("track",m_opts)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        %track = "yes"
        %track_start = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
        %track_end = @word(@pagesmpl,2)
        call mcz_equalopt("tstart",m_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
            %track_start = @lower(%temp)
        endif
        call mcz_equalopt("tend",m_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
            %track_end = @lower(%temp)
        endif
    endif
endif

```

```

        smpl %track_start %track_end
        {%_$_mod_b}.addinit(v=n) @all
        {%_$_mod_f}.addinit(v=n) @all
    endif
endif

if !m_case = 2 then
    group $_mce_errs {%mod}_targs}
    group $_mce_instrus {%mod}_instrus}
endif

if !m_case = 3 then
    call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        %errs = @wcross("e",%temp)
        group $_mce_errs {%errs}
        %instrus = @wcross(%temp,"_a")
        group $_mce_instrus {%instrus}
    endif
endif

' *****
' 2.  Examine a_opts string (specifies mce algorithm)
' *****
'
' Case 1:  blank string and %existing_algos = "yes"
'          => do not call mcz_algo (use existing settings)
' Case 2:  blank string and %existing_algos <> "yes"
'          => call mcz_algo to set default options
' Case 3:  nonblank string
'          => call mcz_algo using string to set options overrides

if @isempty(a_opts) = 1 then
    if %existing_algos = "yes" then
        !a_case = 1
    else
        !a_case = 2
        call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f," ",$_mce_instrus,$_mce_errs)
    endif
else
    !a_case = 3
    call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f,a_opts,$_mce_instrus,$_mce_errs)
endif

```

```

' *****
' 3. Examine s_opts string (specifies type of simulation)
' *****

if @isempty(s_opts) = 1 then
    @uiprompt("error:  no simulation action requested")
    stop
endif

' make a copy of s_opts for parsing within this subroutine
' (the original is passed to other subroutines for additional
' parsing)
string _$_opts = s_opts
$_opts = @lower($_opts)
$_opts = @replace($_opts," ","")
$_opts = @replace($_opts,","," ")
$_opts = " " + $_opts + " "

' check for keywords that pertain to all simulation types
call mcz_hasopt("scen",$_opts)
if !hasflag = 1 then
    call mcz_equalopt("suf",$_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        string $_sufsim = @lower(%temp)
    else
        string $_sufsim = "_1"
    endif
    %sufsim = $_sufsim
    %scenname = "mce_sim" + $_sufsim
    {%$_mod_b}.scenario(n,a=%sufsim) %scenname
    {%$_mod_f}.scenario(n,a=%sufsim) %scenname
endif
call mcz_equalopt("solveopt",$_opts)
{%$_mod_b}.solveopt(o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)
{%$_mod_f}.solveopt(o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    {%$_mod_b}.solveopt({{%temp}})
    {%$_mod_f}.solveopt({{%temp}})
endif
call mcz_equalopt("txt",$_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    for !j = 1 to {%temp}.@linecount
        %tmp = @lower({%temp}.@line(!j))
        {%tmp}
    next
endif

```

```

!mceshow = 1
call mcz_equalopt("o",_$_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
  !mceshow = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("sstart",_$_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
  %mcestart = @lower(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("send",_$_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
  %mceend = @lower(%temp)
endif
smpl %mcestart %mceend
!nqtrs = @obssmpl
call mcz_hasopt("cleanup",_$_opts)
if !hasflag = 1 then
  %cleanup = "yes"
else
  %cleanup = "no"
endif
call mcz_hasopt("dontstop",_$_opts)
if !hasflag = 1 then
  %dontstop = "yes"
  if @maxerrs - @errorcount < 2 then
    !tt = @errorcount + 2
    setmaxerrs !tt
  endif
else
  %dontstop = "no"
endif

' create various program variables and objects that are needed by
' all simulation types; compute initial Jacobian in some cases
call mcz_sim_setup
if %mcz_sim_setup = "err" then
  %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
  return
endif

' determine simulation type
call mcz_equalopt("type",_$_opts)
if @len(%temp) > 0 then
  %simtype = @lower(%temp)
  if %simtype = "single" then
    call mcz_sim(_$_opts)

```

```

if %mcz_sim = "err" then
    %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
    return
endif
else
if %simtype = "opt" or %simtype = "opttc" then
    call mcz_equalopt("targs",_$_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %targs = @lower(%temp)
    else
        @uiprompt("error:  targs keyword is missing")
        stop
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("instrus",_$_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %instrus = @lower(%temp)
    else
        @uiprompt("error:  instrus keyword is missing")
        stop
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("cnstr",_$_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %cnstr = @lower(%temp)
        %cnstrflag = "yes"
    else
        text _$_blanktext
        %cnstr = "_$_blanktext"
        %cnstrflag = "no"
    endif
    call mcz_opt_setup(s_opts,{%instrus},{%targs},{%cnstr})
    else
        @uiprompt("error:  invalid simtype")
        stop
    endif
endif
else
    @uiprompt("error:  required simtype keyword not found")
    stop
endif

```

endsub

Defines:

mce\_run, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, 95, 112, and 114.

Uses mcz\_algo 107, mcz\_equalopt 111a, mcz\_hasopt 111b, mcz\_opt\_setup 136,  
mcz\_parsemod 104, mcz\_sim 114, and mcz\_sim\_setup 112.

### 6.2.3 determine endogenous and exogenous variables

```

104  <determine endogenous and exogenous variables 104>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_parsemod(model modo)
      ,
      ' This subroutine takes modo, a model with explicit leads, and creates
      ' four objects. The name of each created object starts with the name of the
      ' input model, which is denoted by <modname>.
      ,
      ' 1. Model _$_<modname>_b is the same as modo but with all leads replaced
      ' with exogenous variables
      ' 2. Model _$_<modname>_f contains the MCE error equations
      ' 3. String <modname>_instrus of the names of the added exogenous variables,
      ' which are the instruments to be used to drive the MCE errors to zero
      ' 4. String <modname>_targs of the names of the endogenous variables in
      ' <modname>_f, which are the names of MCE error variables

      ' preliminaries
      %ok_chars = "--+*(^ "
      freeze(_$_modtext) modo.text
      string _$_endog = @lower(modo.@endoglist)
      !nvars = @wcount(_$_endog)
      %leadnames = " "
      %errnames = " "

      %mm = @lower(modo.@name)
      %$_mod_b = "_$_" + %mm + "_b"
      %$_mod_f = "_$_" + %mm + "_f"
      model {%$_mod_b}
      model {%$_mod_f}

      ' create model _$_<modname>_b
      smpl @all
      for !i2 = 1 to _$_modtext.@linecount
        %tmp2 = @ltrim(@lower(_$_modtext.@line(!i2)))
        %aa = @left(%tmp2,1)
        if %aa <> "@" then
          for !i1 = 1 to !nvars
            !occurrence = 1
            %tmp1 = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "("
            !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1)
            if !kk > 0 then
              while !kk > 0
                'three possibilities
                ' 1. it is part of another variable name

```

```

' 2. it is a lag
' 3. it is a lead
,
'look at character in %tmp2 just before %tmp1 to make sure that %tmp1
'is not part of a longer variable or coefficient name
%before = @mid(%tmp2, !kk-1,1)
if @instr(%ok_chars,%before) > 0 then
    %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp2,!kk)
    !kkll = @instr(%tmp3,"(")
    !kkrr = @instr(%tmp3,")")
    %laglead = @mid(%tmp3,!kkll, !kkrr-!kkll+1)
    !ll = 0 + {%laglead}
    if !ll <= 0 then 'it is a lag -- skip it
        !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
    endif
    if !ll > 0 then 'it is a lead -- define a new variable
        %aaa = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + %laglead
        %bbb = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "_ld_" + @str(!ll)
        series {%bbb} = {%aaa}
        %tmp4 = @replace(%tmp2,%aaa,%bbb,1)
        %tmp2 = %tmp4
        %leadnames = %leadnames + " " + %bbb
    endif
    else 'it is part of another variable name -- skip it
        !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
    endif
    !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1,!occurrence)
wend
endif
next
endif
{$_$_mod_b}.append {%tmp2}
next

' create _$_<modname>_f
%leadnames = @wunique(%leadnames)
'smpl @all
for !i1 = 1 to @wcount(%leadnames)
    %tmp1 = @word(%leadnames,!i1)
    !k1 = @instr(%tmp1,"_ld_")
    %tmp2 = @left(%tmp1,!k1-1)
    %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp1,!k1+4)
    %tmp4 = "err_" + %tmp2 + "_" + @str(%tmp3)
    series {%tmp4} = 0
    %errnames = %errnames + " " + %tmp4
    %eqstring = %tmp4 + "=" + %tmp1 + "-" + %tmp2 + "(" + @str(%tmp3) + ")"

```

```
        {%$_mod_f}.append {%eqstring}  
    next  
  
    ' create mce instrument and target strings  
  
    string {%mm}_instrus = %leadnames  
    string {%mm}_targs = %errnames  
  
endsub
```

Defines:

mcz\_parsemod, used in chunk 97.



## 6.2.4 determine default method, linesearch, and other options

```

107  <determine default method, linesearch, and other options 107>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_algo(string mcz_mod_b, string mcz_mod_f, string mcz_algo_opts, group mcz_instr

      %existing_algos = "yes"

      mcz_algo_opts = @lower(mcz_algo_opts)
      mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts," ","")
      mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts,",",", ")
      mcz_algo_opts = " " + mcz_algo_opts + " "

      ' default values for method options
      %meth = "newton"
      %jinit = "interp"
      !nskip = 12
      !jtrigger = .5

      ' default values for linesearch options
      %linemeth = "armijo"
      !linetrigger = .9
      !mcelinemax = 10
      !lambda = 1.0
      !lrat = .5
      !mcz_step_max = 1.0

      ' default values for other options
      !mceconv = .00001
      !mcemaxiter = 20
      !mceptrb = .001
      !broymax = 600

      ' just in case
      %terminal = "no"

      ' are there overrides to defaults?
      if @len(mcz_algo_opts) > 0 then

      ' *****
      ' look for method option
      call mcz_equalopt("meth",mcz_algo_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %meth = @lower(%temp)
        if %meth = "broy" then
          %jinit = "bd"

```

```

        %jupdate = "na"
        %linemeth = "lmr"
        !mccmaxiter = 200
    endif
    if %meth = "qnewton" then
        %jinit = "bd"
        %jupdate = "na"
        %linemeth = "lmr"
        !mccmaxiter = 200
        call mcz_equalopt("broymax",mcz_algo_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
            !broymax = @val(%temp)
        endif
    endif
    if %meth = "ft" then
        %jinit = "identity"
        %jupdate = "na"
        %linemeth = "na"
        !mccmaxiter = 500
    endif
endif

' *****
' look for jinit and jt options
call mcz_equalopt("jinit",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %temp = @lower(%temp)
    if @instr(%temp,"interp(") then
        !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
        !nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
        %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
        %jinit = "interp"
    else
        %jinit = @lower(%temp)
    endif
endif
call mcz_equalopt("jt",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !jtrigger = @val(%temp)
endif

' *****
' look for jupdate option
%jupdate = %jinit
call mcz_equalopt("jupdate",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then

```

```

%temp = @lower(%temp)
if @instr(%temp,"interp") then
    !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
    !nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
    %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
    %jupdate = "interp"
else
    %jupdate = @lower(%temp)
endif
endif

' *****
' look for options related to linesearch
call mcz_equalopt("lmeth",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %linemeth = @lower(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("lt",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !linetrigger = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcelinemax = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("lambda",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !lambda = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcz_step_max = @val(%temp)
endif

' *****
' look for other options
call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mceconv = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_algo_opts)
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcemaxiter = @val(%temp)
endif
call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_algo_opts)

```

```

    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !mceptrb = @val(%temp)
    endif

endif

' *****
' verify the MCE instrument and error arguments

!nmceinstrus = $_mce_instrus.@count
!nmcetargs = $_mce_errs.@count

if !nmcetargs <> !nmceinstrus then
    @uiprompt("Error: There must be as many mce errors as there are mce instruments")
    stop
endif

' *****
' check that mce instruments are exogenous variables or add factors
' in the lag model
%exog_vnames = {%$_mod_b}.@exoglist
%adds_vnames = {%$_mod_b}.@addfactors
%exog_vnames = %exog_vnames + " " + %adds_vnames
%endog_vnames = {%$_mod_b}.@endoglist
for !i = 1 to $_mce_instrus.@count
    %vvv = $_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
    !cc = @wfindnc(%exog_vnames,%vvv)
    if !cc = 0 then
        %errstring = "mce control variable " + %vvv + " is not an exogenous variable or"
        @uiprompt(%errstring)
        stop
    endif
endfor
next

' *****
' check that mce errors are endogenous variables in the lead model
%endog_lnames = {%$_mod_f}.@endoglist
for !i = 1 to $_mce_errs.@count
    %vvv = $_mce_errs.@seriesname(!i)
    !cc = @wfindnc(%endog_lnames,%vvv)
    if !cc = 0 then
        %errstring = "mce error variable " + %vvv + " is not an endogenous variable in"
        @uiprompt(%errstring)
        stop
    endif
endfor

```

```
next
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz_algo`, used in chunk 97.

Uses `mcz_equalopt` 111a.

## 6.2.5 parse options containing equal signs

111a  $\langle$ *parse options containing equal signs* 111a $\rangle \equiv$  (210)  

```
subroutine mcz_equalopt(string optionstext,string opts)
```

```

' parse an option that contains an "=" sign
optionstext = " " + optionstext + "="
!k10 = @instr(opts,optionstext)
if !k10 > 0 then
    !k11 = @len(optionstext)
    %tmp10 = @mid(opts,!k10+!k11)
    !k12 = @instr(%tmp10," ")
    %temp = @left(%tmp10,!k12-1)
else
    %temp = ""
endif
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz_equalopt`, used in chunks 97, 107, 114, 136, and 169.

## 6.2.6 parse options not containing equal signs

111b  $\langle$ *parse options not containing equal signs* 111b $\rangle \equiv$  (210)  

```
subroutine mcz_hasopt(string optionstext,string opts)
```

```

' parse an option that does not contain an "=" sign
!k10 = @wfind(opts,optionstext)
if !k10 > 0 then
    !hasflag = 1
else
    !hasflag = 0
endif
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz_hasopt`, used in chunks 97, 114, and 136.

## 6.2.7 create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables

```

112  <create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables 112>≡      (210)
      subroutine mcz_sim_setup

' create various program variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables
' that are common to all simulation types

      !tmcetargs = !nmcetargs * !nqtrs
      !tmceinstrus = !nmceinstrus * !nqtrs
      %mce_targ_names = _$_mce_errs.@members
      %mce_instru_names = _$_mce_instrus.@members

      string _$_mod_f_exog = @lower({%$_mod_f}.@exoglist)
      string _$_mod_b_endog = @lower({%$_mod_b}.@endoglist)
      %fvars = @wintersect(_$_mod_f_exog,_$_mod_b_endog)
      {%$_mod_f}.override {%fvars}

      !re_counter = 0

' *****
' create additional matrix/vector objects

      vector(!mce_maxiter+1) _$_mce_loss_vec
      vector(!mce_maxiter+1) _$_mce_conv_vec
      vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_direction = 0
      vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_instru_vec = 0
      vector(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs) _$_mce_gap_vec
      matrix _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!nqtrs,!nmceinstrus,!mceptrb)
      matrix(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,1) _$_mce_targ_vec
      matrix(!tmcetargs,1) _$_mce_targ_dvec

' *****
' misc

      table(!mce_maxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats

' *****
' compute initial jacobian except when it is an identity matrix
' or when its been created by a previous call to mce_run
      if %jinit <> "identity" and !a_case <> 1 then
          !mce_try = 1

```

```
    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    call mcz_solvit
    if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
        %mcz_sim_setup = "err"
        return
    endif

    call mcz_derivs
endif
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

    mcz\_sim\_setup, used in chunk 97.

Uses mce\_run 97, mcz\_derivs 125, and mcz\_solvit 123.

## 6.2.8 model consistent coefficient simulation

```

114  <model consistent coefficient simulation 114>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_sim(string mcz_sim_options)

          %mcz_sim = "ok"

          ' *****
          ' 1. set options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_sim_options
          ' *****

          ' for some unknown reason, sometimes evIEWS bombs unless mcz_sim_options
          ' is assigned to another string before processing it
          %mso = mcz_sim_options

          %mso = @lower(%mso)
          %mso = @replace(%mso," ","")
          %mso = @replace(%mso,","," ")
          %mso = " " + %mso + " "

          %terminal = "no"
          %mcevars_b = " "
          %mcevars_f = " "

          if @len(%mso) > 0 then
              call mcz_hasopt("terminal",%mso)
              if !hasflag = 1 then
                  %terminal = "yes"
                  call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_b",%mso)
                  if @len(%temp)>0 then
                      %mcevars_b = @lower(%temp)
                      call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_f",%mso)
                      if @len(%temp)>0 then
                          %mcevars_f = @lower(%temp)
                          if @wcount(%mcevars_b) <> @wcount(%mcevars_f) then
                              %estring = "Error: mcevars_b and mcevars_f have different numbers of variables"
                              @uiprompt(%estring)
                              stop
                          endif
                      endif
                  endif
              endif
          endif

          if %linemeth = "lmr" then
              !mhistory = 4
          endif
      endsubroutine

```



```

!tmin = .1
!tmax = .5
!gammak = 10(-4)
endif

' *****
' 2. set up table of iteration-by-iteration statistics
' *****

if @isobject("mce_sim_stats") then
    delete mce_sim_stats
endif
table(!mce_maxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats
mce_sim_stats.setwidth(1:1) 6
mce_sim_stats.setwidth(2:6) 11
mce_sim_stats.setlines(a2:f2) +b
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,1,"iter")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,2,"converge")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,2,"stat")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,3,"SSR")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,3,"stat")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,4,"step")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,4,"length")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,5,"step")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,5,"iters")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,6,"Newton MCE")
setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,6,"deriv's?")

' *****
' 3. information text file
' *****

if @isobject("mce_sim_text") then
    delete mce_sim_text
endif
text mce_sim_text
mce_sim_text.append Simulation start = {%mcestart}
mce_sim_text.append Simulation end   = {%mceend}
mce_sim_text.append MCE method = %meth
if %meth = "newton" then
    mce_sim_text.append -- Initial jacobian = %jinit
    if %jinit = "interp" then
        mce_sim_text.append ---- Jacobian interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
    endif
endif

```

```

mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute Jacobian based on jtrigger = {!jtrigger}
mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute jacobian using method = {%jupdate}
endif
if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
mce_sim_text.append -- Initial Jacobian approximation = %jinit
if %jinit = "interp" then
mce_sim_text.append ---- Interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
endif
if %meth = "qnewton" then
mce_sim_text.append ---- QNewton iteration switch = {!broymax}
endif
endif
if %meth = "ft" then
mce_sim_text.append -- Fixed step size =  {!lambda}
endif
mce_sim_text.append Linesearch method = {%linemeth}
if %linemeth <> "na" then
mce_sim_text.append -- Linesearch trigger = {!linetrigger}
mce_sim_text.append -- Maximum linesearch iterations =  {!mcelinemax}
endif
mce_sim_text.append Convergence criteria = {!mceconv}
mce_sim_text.append Maximum number of MCE iterations = {!mce_maxiter}
mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument perturbation factor = {!mceptrib}
mce_sim_text.append Intermediate output level factor = {!mceshow}

mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument variables = {%mce_instru_names}
mce_sim_text.append MCE error variables = {%mce_targ_names}
mce_sim_text.append There are {!tmceinstrus} instrument and {!tmcetargs} error obs

!re_counter = !re_counter + 1

' *****
' 4. solution iterations
' *****

' *****
' initialize counters, switches, etc.

!mcetry = 0
%mce_converge = "no"
smpl %mcestart %mceend
_$_mce_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_instrus))

' *****
' start of iteration loop

```

```

while !mcetry <= !mce_maxiter and %mce_converge = "no"

    !mcetry = !mcetry + 1
    setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,1,!mcetry-1,0)

    vector _$instru_prev = _$mce_instru_vec
    vector _$gap_prev = _$mce_gap_vec

    !mcz_step = !mcz_step_max
    call mcz_solvit
    if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
        %mcz_sim = "err"
        return
    endif

    if !mcetry > 1 then
        !gamma = _$mce_loss_vec(!mcetry)/_$mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
        !loss_prev = _$mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
        setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,1,0)
        if %linemeth <> "none" and !gamma > !linetrigger then
            if %linemeth = "lmr" then
                call mcz_lmr
                if %mcz_lmr = "err" then
                    %mcz_sim = "err"
                    return
                endif
            endif
            if %linemeth = "armijo" then
                call mcz_armijo
                if %mcz_armijo = "err" then
                    %mcz_sim = "err"
                    return
                endif
            endif
        endif
    endif
endif

if !mceshow < 3 then
    statusline mce solution, iteration !mcetry, f(x) = !nconv
endif

' test for convergence or iteration limit
mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,2) = _$mce_conv_vec(!mcetry)
if _$mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) < !mceconv then
    %mce_converge = "yes"
    mce_sim_text.append At iteration {!mcetry}, convergence

```

```

    %mce_finish = "yes"
  endif
  if !mcetry = !mce_maxiter and _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) >= !mceconv then
    mce_sim_text.append No convergence in {!mce_maxiter} iterations
    if %dontstop = "yes" then
      %mce_finish = "no"
      %mce_converge = "yes"
      mce_sim_text.append Terminating call to mce_run, but execution continues
    else
      @uiprompt("No convergence in maximum number of iterations. Execution termin
      stop
    endif
  endif
endif

' continue if not converged
if %mce_converge = "no" then

' *****
' Newton algorithm (optionally update MCE jacobian)
if %meth = "newton" then
  if !mcetry = 1 then
    if %jinit = "identity" then
      matrix _$_mce_der_mat = !dfactor*@identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
    endif
    if %jinit = "bd" then
      for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
        !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
        matrix _$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj} = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!r+1,!r+1,!r-
      next
      delete(noerr) _$_mce_der_mat
    endif
    if %jinit <> "identity" then
      mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+3,6) = "yes"
    endif
  else
    if (!gamma >= !jtrigger and %jupdate <> "none") then
      %jinit_bac = %jinit
      %jinit = %jupdate
      call mcz_derivs
      %jinit = %jinit_bac
    endif
  endif

  if %jinit = "bd" then
    for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs

```

```

        vector _$_vec_adds = -$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}*@subextract($_mce_gap_vec,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
        matplace($_mce_direction, $_vec_adds, (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
    next
else
    $_mce_direction = -($_mce_der_mat*$_mce_gap_vec)
endif

endif

' *****
' Broyden algorithms
if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
    if !mcetry = 1 then
        if %jinit <> "identity" then
            $_mce_direction = -($_mce_der_mat*$_mce_gap_vec)
        else
            matrix $_mce_der_mat = @identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
            $_mce_direction = -$_mce_gap_vec
        endif
        if %jinit = "bd" then
            for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
                !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
                matrix $_mce_der_mat_{!ijj} = @subextract($_mce_der_mat,!r+1,!r+1,!r+!nqtrs,!r+!nqtrs)
            next
            if %bmeth = "qnewton" then
                delete(noerr) $_mce_der_mat
            endif
        endif
    endif
    if !mcetry > 1 then
        vector $_instru_delta = $_mce_instru_vec - $_instru_prev
        vector $_gap_delta = $_mce_gap_vec - $_gap_prev

        ' *****
        if %meth = "broy" then
            matrix $_jy = $_mce_der_mat*$_gap_delta
            matrix $_sj = @transpose($_instru_delta)*$_mce_der_mat
            scalar $_sjf = @sum(@transpose($_instru_delta)*$_jy)
            $_mce_der_mat = $_mce_der_mat + (($_instru_delta - $_jy)*$_sj)/$_sjf
            $_mce_direction = -($_mce_der_mat*$_mce_gap_vec)
        endif

        ' *****
        if %meth = "qnewton" then
            if !mcetry = 2 then
                ' create some matrices on first pass

```

```

vector(!broymax) _$_stp_nrm
matrix(!tmceinstrus,!broymax) _$_stp
vector(!broymax) _$_lam_rec
matrix(!tmceinstrus,1) _$_z
vector(!broymax) _$_counter
for !iq = 1 to !broymax
  _$_counter(!iq) = !iq
next
endif

if !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
  !q = !mcetry-1
  !f = !q
else
  !q = @mod(!mcetry-1,!broymax) + 1
  !f = !broymax
call shiftright(_$_counter,1)
endif

colplace(_$_stp,_$_instru_delta,!q)
_$_stp_nrm(!q) = @norm(_$_instru_delta,2)
_$_lam_rec(!q) = !mcz_step

if %jinit = "bd" and !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
  for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
    vector _$_vec_adds = -_$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}* @subextract(_$_mce_gap_vec,
    matplace(_$_z,_$_vec_adds,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
    next
  else
    _$_z = -_$_mce_gap_vec
  endif

if !mcetry > 2 then
  for !kbroy = 2 to !f
    !k0 = _$_counter(!kbroy)
    !k1 = _$_counter(!kbroy - 1)
    !a = _$_lam_rec(!k1)/_$_lam_rec(!k0)
    !b = _$_lam_rec(!k1) - 1
    _$_z = _$_z + (!a*@columnextract(_$_stp,!k0)+!b*@columnextract(_$_stp,
  next
endif
!nrm2 = _$_stp_nrm(!q)^2
!lam = _$_lam_rec(!q)
!stz = @sum(@transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_z)
_$_mce_direction = (!nrm2*_$_z-(1-!lam)*!stz*_$_instru_delta)/(!nrm2-!lam)
endif

```

```

        endif
    endif

    ' *****
    ' Fair-Taylor algorithm
    if %meth = "ft" then
        _$_mce_direction = -!lambda*$_mce_gap_vec
    endif
    ' *****

    endif

wend

' *****
' 5. final steps
' *****

scalar _$_iterations = !mcetry

if !mceshow = 2 then
    close mce_sim_stats
endif

if !mceshow = 1 or !mceshow = 2 then
    if @isobject("mce_sim_spool") then
        delete mce_sim_spool
    endif
    spool mce_sim_spool
    mce_sim_spool.append mce_sim_stats
    mce_sim_spool.append mce_sim_text
    mce_sim_spool.name untitled01 mce_sim_stats
    mce_sim_spool.name untitled02 mce_sim_text
    show mce_sim_spool
endif

if !mceshow < 3 then
    statusline mcz_sim finished
endif

if %simtype = "single" and %cleanup = "yes" then
    delete(noerr) _$_*
endif

```

`endsub`

Defines:

`mcz_sim`, used in chunks 95, 97, 147, 152, 160, and 162.

Uses `close` 217a, `mce_run` 97, `mcz_armijo` 133, `mcz_derivs` 125, `mcz_equalopt` 111a,  
`mcz_hasopt` 111b, `mcz_lmr` 131, `mcz_solvit` 123, and `shiftright` 167.



## 6.2.9 solve model consistent instrument values

```

123  <solve model consistent instrument values 123>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_solvit

      ' This subroutine first sets the MCE instrument values based on the current
      ' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the models

      %mcz_solvit = "ok"

      ' update instrument values based on current direction and step size
      if !mcetry > 1 then
        mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,4) = !mcz_step
        _$_mce_instru_vec = _$_instru_prev + !mcz_step*$_mce_direction
        matrix _$_tmp_mat = @unvec(_$_mce_instru_vec,!nqtrs)
        mtos(_$_tmp_mat,_$_mce_instrus)
      endif

      ' solve lag model
      smpl %mcestart %mceend
      !err_before = @errorcount
      {$_$_mod_b}.solve
      !err_after = @errorcount
      if !err_after > !err_before then
        if %dontstop = "yes" then
          %mcz_solvit = "err"
          return
        else
          @uiprompt("Error in solving lag model: execution terminating")
          stop
        endif
      endif

      ' optionally set terminal conditions on first iteration
      if !mcetry = 1 and %terminal = "yes" then
        call mcz_terminal
      endif

      ' solve lead model
      smpl %mcestart %mceend
      !err_before = @errorcount
      {$_$_mod_f}.solve
      !err_after = @errorcount
      if !err_after > !err_before then
        if %dontstop = "yes" then
          %mcz_solvit = "err"

```

```

        return
    else
        @uiprompt("Error in solving lead model: execution terminating")
        stop
    endif
endif

' create group of the solution values of the mce target variables
' on the first iteration
if !mcetry = 1 then
    {%$_mod_f}.makegroup $_mce_errs_sols {%mce_targ_names}
endif

' compute mce error functions
$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert($_mce_errs_sols))
$_mce_gap_vec = $_mce_targ_vec
!nloss = @norm($_mce_gap_vec,2)^2
mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,3) = !nloss
$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry) = !nloss
!nconv = @max(@abs($_mce_gap_vec))
$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) = !nconv
if !mcetry > 1 then
    !gamma = !nloss/$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
endif

if !mceshow = 2 then
    show mce_sim_stats
endif

endsub

```

Defines:

mcz.solvit, used in chunks 95, 112, 114, 131, and 133.

Uses mcz\_terminal 134 and solve 217a.

## 6.2.10 compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments

125  $\langle \text{compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments } 125 \rangle \equiv$  (210)

```

subroutine mcz_derivs

' This subroutine computes the derivatives of the mce targets wrt the mce instruments

mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,6) = "yes"
matrix _$_mce_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs,!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,0)

if !mcetry > 1 then
  '$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-6
  _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-4
endif

smpl %mcestart %mceend
$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert($_mce_errs_sols))

!maxlead = 1

' *****
' construct vector that determines when exact derivatives
' need to be computed

' _$_dvec > 0 => period in which derivatives are to be simulated
' _$_dvec = 1 => but derivatives do not have to be spread/interpolated forward or back
' _$_dvec = 2 => and derivatives have to be spread forward down diagonals
' _$_dvec = 3 => and derivatives have to be spread backward up diagonals
' _$_dvec = 4 => and derivatives have to be interpolated backward along diagonals
' _$_dvec = 5 => hybrid
vector(!nqtrs) _$_dvec = 0

' *****
if %jinit = "every" then
  _$_dvec = _$_dvec + 1
endif

' *****
if %jinit = "interp" then
  _$_dvec(1) = 1
  _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 4
  for !ij0 = (1+!nskip) to (!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) step !nskip
    _$_dvec(!ij0) = 4
  next
  if !maxlead > 0 then

```

```

        for !ij0 = (!nqtrs-!maxlead+1) to !nqtrs
            _$_dvec(!ij0) = 1
        next
    endif
    if _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) = 4 then
        _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 1
    endif
endif

' *****
if %jinit = "bd" then
    !bd_col = @floor(!nqtrs/2)
    _$_dvec(!bd_col) = 5
endif

' *****
' code modified 5/27/10 to reduce the number of derivative
' sims by 1 per mc variable -- will work only when
' maxlead = 1
if %jinit = "linear" then
    _$_dvec(1) = 2
    _$_dvec(!nqtrs) = 3
    ' _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 3
    'for !ij0 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1 to !nqtrs
    '    _$_dvec(!ij0) = 1
    ' next
endif

' *****
' *****
' Outer loop: specifies which instrument is shocked
for !ij1 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
    %instru_name = _$_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!ij1)
    statusline computing MCE derivatives for instrument %instru_name

' *****
' Middle loop: simulates effects of instrument shock for selected time periods
!skip = 0
for !ij2 = 1 to !nqtrs
    !skip = !skip + 1
    if _$_dvec(!ij2) > 0 then
        !perturbit = _$_mce_ptrb_mat(!ij2,!ij1)
        !col = (!ij1-1)*!nqtrs + !ij2
        smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
        {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
    endif
endfor
endfor

```

```

    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    {%_$_mod_b}.solve
    {%_$_mod_f}.solve
    $_mce_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert($_mce_errs_sols))
    matplace($_mce_der_mat,($_mce_targ_dvec-$_mce_targ_vec)/!perturbit,1,!col)
    smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
    {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit

' *****
' Inner loop: place and/or interpolates derivatives
if %jinit <> "every" then
    for !ij3 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
        !row = (!ij3-1)*!nqtrs + 1
        matrix $_tempa = @subextract($_mce_der_mat,!row,!col,!row+!nqtrs-1,!col)

' *****
        if %jinit = "linear" then

' forward loop moves the derivative diagonally down to the right
' when $_dvec = 2
        if $_dvec(!ij2) = 2 then
            for !ij4 = 1 to (!nqtrs - !maxlead - 1)
                matrix $_tempb = @subextract($_tempa,1,1,!nqtrs-!ij4,1)
                matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempb,!row+!ij4,!col+!ij4)
            next
        endif

' backward loop moves the derivative diagonally up to the left
' when $_dvec = 3
        if $_dvec(!ij2) = 3 then
            !ij5 = !nqtrs - !maxlead - 1
            for !ij4 = 1 to !ij5
                matrix $_tempb = @subextract($_tempa,(1+!ij4),1,!nqtrs-!maxlead,1)
                matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempb,!row,!col-!ij4)
            next
        endif

' fill unassigned elements of last !maxlead rows with zeros when $_dvec = 3
        if $_dvec(!ij2) = 3 then
            !ij5 = !nqtrs - 2
            matrix(1,!ij5) $_tempc = 0
            for !ij4 = 1 to !maxlead
                matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempc,!row+!nqtrs-!ij4,!col-!nqtrs+2)
            next
        endif
    endfor
endfor

```

```

endif

' *****
if (%jinit = "interp") and (_$_dvec(!ij2) = 4) then
  !nn2 = !nqtrs-!skip+1
  'fill in columns between current and previous derivative
  '$_tempa holds current derivative, $_tempb holds previous derivative

  matrix $_tempa1 = @subextract($_tempa,1,1,!skip,1)
  matrix $_tempa2 = @subextract($_tempa,!skip+1,1,!nqtrs,1)

  'previous derivative
  matrix $_tempb = @subextract($_mce_der_mat,!row,!col-!skip,!row+!nqtrs,1)
  matrix $_tempb1 = @subextract($_tempb,1,1,!nn2-1,1)
  matrix $_tempb2 = @subextract($_tempb,!nn2,1,!nqtrs,1)

  'forward loop moves lower (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of $_tempb diag
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
    matrix $_tempb2a = @subextract($_tempb2,1,1,!skip-!ij4,1)
    matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempb2a,!row+!nn2-1+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
  next

  'backward loop moves upper (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of $_tempa diag
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
    matrix $_tempa1a = @subextract($_tempa1,1+!ij4,1,!skip,1)
    matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempa1a,!row,!col-!ij4)
  next

  'overlap loop interpolates upper part of $_tempb and lower part of $_tempa
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
    matrix $_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*$_tempb1 + (!ij4/!skip)*$_tempa1a
    matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempc,!row+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
  next

  'optionally interpolate elements of last !maxlead rows across each row
  !qqqq = 0
  if !qqqq = 1 then
    !nn3 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1
    matrix $_tempa3 = @subextract($_tempa,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
    matrix $_tempb3 = @subextract($_tempb,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
    for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
      matrix $_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*$_tempb3 + (!ij4/!skip)*$_tempa3
      matplace($_mce_der_mat,$_tempc,!row+!nn3-1,!col-!skip+!ij4)
    next
  endif
endif

```

```

endif

'*****
'The bd method takes account of only two own-derivative elements --
'one on the diagonal and one on the first super diagonal. The latter is
'important for one-lead euler equations.
',
'there is some crude coding here, reflecting the fact that the full column
'of the derivatives matrix has already been filled in and needs to be
'zeroed out

if (%jinit = "bd") and (_$dvec(!ij2) = 5) and (!ij1=!ij3) then
  matplace(_$mce_der_mat,0*$_mce_targ_dvec,1,!col)
  !diag = $_tempa(!bd_col,1)
  vector(!nqtrs-1) $_tempb = $_tempa(!bd_col-1,1)
  'vector(!nqtrs-1) $_tempb1 = $_tempa(!bd_col+1,1)
  matrix(!nqtrs,!nqtrs) $_tempc
  matrix $_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal($_tempb,1)
  'matrix $_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal($_tempb,1) + @makediagonal
  $_tempc = @inverse($_tempc)
  matplace(_$mce_der_mat,$_tempc,!row,!row)
endif

'*****

  next
  !skip = 0
endif
endif
next
next
' *****

delete(noerr) $_tempa $_tempb $_tempc $_tempd

'recalculate current solution
smpl %mcestart %mceend
{$_$_mod_b}.solve
{$_$_mod_f}.solve

' *****
' invert derivative matrix (unless using bd method, in which case
' it's already inverted)
if %jinit <> "bd" then

```

```
statusline inverting MCE derivative matrix
_$_mce_der_mat = @inverse(_$_mce_der_mat)
endif
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz.derivs`, used in chunks 112 and 114.

Uses `left` 218 and `solve` 217a.



### 6.2.11 model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure

131  $\langle$ model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure 131 $\rangle \equiv$  (210)

```

subroutine mcz_lmr

    %mcz_lmr = "ok"

    !step_pos = !mcz_step
    !step_neg = !mcz_step
    %line_converge = "no"
    !nk = _$_mce_loss_vec(1)/(!mcetry)^2
    !loss_prev = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
    if !mhistory >= (!mcetry-1) then
        vector losshist = @subextract(_$_mce_loss_vec,1,1,!mcetry-1,1)
    else
        vector losshist = @subextract(_$_mce_loss_vec,!mcetry-!mhistory,1,!mcetry-1,1)
    endif
    !fkbar = @max(losshist)
    for !j = 1 to !mcelinemax
        if !j > 1 then
            !mcz_step = !step_pos
            call mcz_solvit
            if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
                %mcz_lmr = "err"
                return
            endif
        endif
        if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_pos^2*!loss_prev) then
            %line_converge = "yes"
            exitloop
        else
            !nloss_pos = !nloss
            !mcz_step = -!step_neg
            call mcz_solvit
            if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
                %mcz_lmr = "err"
                return
            endif
            if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_neg^2*!loss_prev) then
                %line_converge = "yes"
                exitloop
            endif
            !nloss_neg = !nloss
        endif
        !alphaneg = !step_pos^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_pos + (2*!step_pos-1)*!loss_prev)
    endfor
end subroutine

```

```

if !alphan < (!tmin*!step_pos) then
  !step_pos = !tmin*!step_pos
else
  if !alphan > !tmax*!step_pos then
    !step_pos = !tmax*!step_pos
  else
    !step_pos = !alphan
  endif
endif
endif
!alphan = !step_neg^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_neg + (2*!step_neg-1)*!loss_prev)
if !alphan < (!tmin*!step_neg) then
  !step_neg = !tmin*!step_neg
else
  if !alphan > !tmax*!step_neg then
    !step_neg = !tmax*!step_neg
  else
    !step_neg = !alphan
  endif
endif
endif
next
setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcctry+2,5,!j,0)

endsub

```

Defines:

`mccz_lmr`, used in chunk 114.

Uses `mccz_solvit` 123.

### 6.2.12 model consistent armijo optimization rule

133  $\langle$ model consistent armijo optimization rule 133 $\rangle \equiv$  (210)

```

subroutine mcz_armijo

  %mcz_armijo = "ok"

  !iarm = 0
  while ((!nloss > (1-.01*!mcz_step)*!loss_prev) and !iarm < !mcelinemax)
    !mcz_step = !lrat * !mcz_step
    call mcz_solvit
    if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
      %mcz_armijo = "err"
      return
    endif
    !iarm = !iarm + 1
  wend
  setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,!iarm,0)

endsub

```

Defines:  
   mcz\_armijo, used in chunk 114.  
 Uses mcz\_solvit 123.

### 6.2.13 variable terminal values

```

134  (variable terminal values 134)≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_terminal

      ' Set terminal values for all variables in _$_mod_f that might
      ' appear with leads, based on the simulated values of the corresponding
      ' variables in _$_mod_b at the end of the simulation period.
      ' Terminal values of stationary variables equal their last simulated
      ' level. Terminal values of nonstationary are based on extrapolating their
      ' simulated growth rates.
      ,
      ' This subroutine is usually called only once per MCE simulation and only
      ' for MCE simulations of permanent shocks. Multiple calls to this
      ' subroutine may result in convergence problems as a result of terminal
      ' values that drift from iteration to iteration.

      ' %fvars (variables that are exogenous in _$_mod_f and
      ' also endogenous in _$_mod_b)

      {$_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_fvars_sols {%fvars}

      for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%fvars)
        %tmpa = @lower(@word(%fvars,!ijj))
        %tmpb = _$_fvars_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
        smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
        !tmpmean = @abs(@mean{%tmpa})
        if !tmpmean > .001 then
          series _$_tmpgrowth = @abs(@movav(d{%tmpa},0,1)/{%tmpa}(-1),8)
        else
          series _$_tmpgrowth = 0
        endif
        !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
        if (!tmpscal < .001) then
          'stationary case
          smpl %mceend + 1 @last
          {%tmpb} = {%tmpb}(-1)
        else
          'nonstationary case
          smpl %mceend %mceend
          series _$_tmpgrowth = @movav(d{%tmpb},0,1)/{%tmpb}(-1),8)
          !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
          smpl %mceend + 1 @last
          {%tmpb} = !tmpscal*{%tmpb}(-1)
        endif
      endfor
    
```

```

    {%tmpa} = {%tmpb}
next

' mcevars_f (mce variables in _$_mod_f, if any) have terminal conditions
' based on the values of mcevars_b (proxies for mce variables in _$_mod_b)

if @wcount(%mcevars_f) > 0 then
    {$_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_mcevars_b_sols {%mcevars_b}
    %mcevars_f1 = {%mcevars_f}
    for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%mcevars_f1)
        %tmpa = @lower(@word(%mcevars_f1,!ijj))
        %tmpb = _$_mcevars_b_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
        smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
        !tmpmean = @abs(@mean({%tmpa}))
        if !tmpmean > .001 then
            series _$_tmpgrowth = @abs(@movav(d({%tmpa},0,1)/{%tmpa}(-1),8))
        else
            series _$_tmpgrowth = 0
        endif
        !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
        if (!tmpscal < .001) then
            'stationary case
            smpl %mceend + 1 @last
            {%tmpb} = {%tmpb}(-1)
        else
            'nonstationary case
            smpl %mceend %mceend
            series _$_tmpgrowth = @movav(d({%tmpb},0,1)/{%tmpb}(-1),8)
            !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
            smpl %mceend + 1 @last
            {%tmpb} = !tmpscal*{%tmpb}(-1)
        endif
        smpl %mceend + 1 %mceend + 8
        {%tmpa} = {%tmpb}
    next
endif

mce_sim_text.append Terminal conditions set at iteration {%mctry}

' once terminal conditions have been set once, turn the switch that
' calls this subroutine off
%terminal = "no"

```

endsub

Defines:

mcz\_terminal, used in chunk 123.

### 6.2.14 set options based on defaults and overrides

```

136  <set options based on defaults and overrides 136>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_opt_setup(string mcz_opt_options, group mcz_opt_instrus, group mcz_opt

      statusline mcz_opt_setup

      ' *****
      ' set up values of options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_opt_options

      mcz_opt_options = @lower(mcz_opt_options)
      mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options," ","")
      mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options,",",", ")
      mcz_opt_options = " " + mcz_opt_options + " "

      ' default values for options

      if %simtype <> "opttc" then
        !optmaxiter = 15
        !optconv = 1e-05
      else
        !optmaxiter = 50
        !optconv = 1e-06
        !tcdamp = 1
      endif

      !optlinemax = 10
      !optptrb = .01
      !opt_step_max = 1.0
      !optshow = 3
      !mceshow = 3

      %evlstart = %mcestart
      %drvstart = %mcestart
      %freq = @pagefreq
      %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%evlstart),59,%freq))
      %drvend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%drvstart),39,%freq))

      %ideriv = "yes"
      %xopen = "yes"
      %xclose = "yes"

      ' if imposing constraints (mcz_opt_qp)
      %qpswitch = "r"

```

```

' are there overrides to defaults?
if @len(mcz_opt_options) > 0 then
    %opts = "yes"
else
    %opts = "no"
endif

if %opts = "yes" then
    call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optmaxiter = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("d",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !tcdamp = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optconv = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optlinemax = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optptrb = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optstepmax = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("oo",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !optshow = @val(%temp)
        !mceshow = @val(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("lstart",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %evlstart = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("lend",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %evlend = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("istart",mcz_opt_options)

```

```

    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %drvstart = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("iend",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %drvend = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("ideriv",mcz_opt_options)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %ideriv = @lower(%temp)
    endif
    call mcz_hasopt("terminal",mcz_opt_options)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        %terminal = "yes"
    endif
    call mcz_hasopt("matlab",mcz_opt_options)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        %qpswitch = "matlab"
    endif
    call mcz_hasopt("/xopen",mcz_opt_options)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        %xopen = "no"
    endif
    call mcz_hasopt("/xclose",mcz_opt_options)
    if !hasflag = 1 then
        %xclose = "no"
    endif

endif

' *****
' Some preliminaries

' copy group subroutine arguments into objects with fixed names so that they can be
' easily accessed by other subroutines
copy mcz_opt_instrus    _$_opt_instrus
copy mcz_opt_targs      _$_opt_targs

smpl %evlstart %evlend
!nevl = @obssmpl
smpl %drvstart %drvend
!ndrv = @obssmpl

' *****

```



```

' Examine the inequality constraints, put them in a table,
' and, if necessary, augment the list of target variables to
' include all constraint variables
if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
    svector _$opt_cnstr = mcz_opt_cnstr.@svectornb
    !nconstraints = @rows(_$opt_cnstr)
    if !nconstraints > 0 then
        table(1,1) _$opt_cnstr_tab
        string _$opt_cnstr_vars = " "
        call mcz_constraints(_$opt_cnstr, _$opt_cnstr_tab, _$opt_cnstr_vars)
        %extra_targets = @wnotin(@upper(_$opt_cnstr_vars), _$opt_targs.@members)
        %extra_targets = @wunique(%extra_targets)
        !nextra = @wcount(%extra_targets)
        if !nextra > 0 then
            for !qq = 1 to !nextra
                %newtarg = @word(%extra_targets, !qq)
                _$opt_targs.add {%newtarg}
                %newtarg_t = %newtarg + "_t"
                %newtarg_w = %newtarg + "_w"
                smpl @all
                series {%newtarg_t} = 0
                series {%newtarg_w} = 0
            next
        endif
    else
        @uiprompt("Error: The cnstr keyword is assigned to an empty text file")
        stop
    endif
endif

' *****
' More preliminaries

!noptinstrus = _$opt_instrus.@count
!nopttargs = _$opt_targs.@count

!topttargs = !nopttargs * !nevl
!toptinstrus = !noptinstrus * !ndrv
if !topttargs < !toptinstrus then
    statusline Error: more instruments than targets
    stop
endif

matrix _$opt_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!ndrv, !noptinstrus, !optptrb)

```

```

vector(!optmaxiter+1) _$_opt_loss_vec

if %ideriv <> "no" then
    matrix _$_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!topttargs,0)
endif

$_opt_targ_names = _$_opt_targs.@members
$_opt_des_names = @wcross($_opt_targ_names,"_t")
group _$_opt_des {$_opt_des_names}
smpl %evlstart %evlend
matrix _$_opt_des_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_des))

' if number of instruments and targets is the same, the optimal loss is zero,
' shortcut formulas can be used, and weights are not necessary
if !toptinstrus = !topttargs then
    !zero_loss = 1
    matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @identity(!topttargs)
else
    !zero_loss = 0
    smpl %evlstart %evlend
    $_opt_wt_names = @wcross($_opt_targ_names,"_w")
    group _$_opt_wts {$_opt_wt_names}
    matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @makediagonal(@vec(@convert(_$_opt_wts)))
endif

' *****
' text file

text mce_opt_text

if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
    mce_opt_text.append constrained optimization using {%qpswitch}: xopen = {%xopen}
else
    mce_opt_text.append unconstrained optimization (EViews)
endif

if %simtype = "opt" then
    mce_opt_text.append optimization type = committment
    mce_opt_text.append simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
    mce_opt_text.append loss evaluation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
    mce_opt_text.append instrument setting period: {%drvstart} - {%drvend}
    mce_opt_text.append max number of optimization iterations = !optmaxiter
    mce_opt_text.append max number of line search steps per iteration = !optlinemax
endif

```

```

if %simtype = "opttc" then
    mce_opt_text.append optimization type = time-consistent nash (discretion)
    mce_opt_text.append first instrument setting period: {%drvstart}
    mce_opt_text.append first simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
    mce_opt_text.append first loss evaluation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
    mce_opt_text.append last instrument setting period: {%drvend}
    mce_opt_text.append max number of backward-induction iterations = !optmaxiter
endif
mce_opt_text.append convergence criteria = !optconv
mce_opt_text.append output control parameter = !optshow
mce_opt_text.append compute instrument derivs? = {%ideriv}
mce_opt_text.append instrument perturbation factor = !optptrb

' *****
' table of iteration-by-iteration statistics

if @isobject("mce_opt_stats") then
    delete mce_opt_stats
endif
table(!optmaxiter+2,7) mce_opt_stats
mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:1) 5
mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:5) 12
mce_opt_stats.setlines(a2:g2) +b
setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,1,"iter")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,2,"f(x)")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,3,"step size")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,4,"convergence")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,4,"statistic")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,5,"linearity")
setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,5,"statistic")

' *****
' call appropriate optimization subroutine

if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "no" then
    call mcz_opt
endif
if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "yes" then
    call mcz_opt_qp
endif
if %simtype = "opttc" then
    call mcz_opt_tc
endif

```

```

', *****
', spool
  if @isobject("mce_opt_spool") then
    delete mce_opt_spool
  endif
  spool mce_opt_spool
  if %simtype = "opt" then
    mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_stats
    mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
    mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_stats
    mce_opt_spool.name untitled02 mce_opt_text
  endif
  if %simtype = "opttc" then
    mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
    mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_text
  endif

  if !optshow <> 4 then
    show mce_opt_spool
    close mce_opt_stats
  endif

  if %cleanup = "yes" then
    delete(noerr) _$_*
  endif

endsub

```

Defines:

mcz\_opt\_setup, used in chunk 97.

Uses close 217a, mcz\_constraints 164, mcz\_equalopt 111a, mcz\_hasopt 111b, mcz\_opt 143, mcz\_opt\_qp 147, and mcz\_opt\_tc 152.

## 6.2.15 main unconstrained optimal control simulation

```

143  <main unconstrained optimal control simulation 143>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_opt

      'Main subroutine for unconstrained optimal control simulations

      ' *****
      ' initialize counters and switches

      !opttry = 0
      %opt_converge = "no"
      !optnonlin = 0
      !optpchloss = 100

      ' *****
      ' initial solution

      smpl %mcestart %mceend
      !opt_step = 0
      !opt_step_prev = 0
      call mcz_opt_solve
      if !opttry = 0 and !optloss = 0 then
        %opt_converge = "yes"
        mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
      endif

      ' *****
      ' iterate to minimize loss
      smpl %mcestart %mceend
      while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"

        !opttry = !opttry + 1

        ' *****
        ' compute instrument derivatives, hessian, gradient, direction, and
        ' predicted loss assuming the model is linear
        if (%ideriv <> "no" and (!opttry = 1 or @abs(!optnonlin) > .1)) then
          call mcz_opt_deriv
        endif
        if !zero_loss = 0 then

```

```

        matrix _$_opt_hess = 2*$_opt_der_mat*$_opt_wt_mat*@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
    else
        matrix _$_opt_hess = 2*@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
    endif
    if @issingular(_$_opt_hess) = 1 then
        %errstring = "Hessian is singular at iteration " + @str(!opttry)
        @uiprompt(%errstring)
        stop
    endif
    matrix _$_opt_hessinv = @inverse(_$_opt_hess)
    if !zero_loss = 0 then
        matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*$_opt_der_mat*$_opt_wt_mat*$_opt_gap_vec
    else
        matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*$_opt_gap_vec
    endif
    vector _$_opt_direction = _$_opt_hessinv*$_opt_grad
    matrix _$_opt_gap_vec_p = _$_opt_gap_vec - @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat) * _$_opt_d
    !optloss_p = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec_p)*$_opt_wt_mat*$_opt_gap_vec_p)

' *****
' solve model and compute loss
!opt_step = !opt_step_max
!opt_step_prev = 0
call mcz_opt_solve

' *****
' test for nonlinearity
' !optnonlin is the ratio of the actual to predicted percentage reduction in loss
' the closer the model is to being linear, the closer !optnonlin is to zero
!ddloss = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry)-$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1))
if !ddloss <> 0 then
    !optnonlin = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)-!optloss_p) / !ddloss
else
    !optnonlin = 100
endif
mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,5) = !optnonlin

' *****
' Search for a better a step size (Armijo condition and backtracking)
!opt_loss_nderiv = -@transpose(_$_opt_grad)*$_opt_direction
!kk = .01
!iarm = 0
while (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) > _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry) + !kk*!opt_step*!opt
    and !iarm < !optlinemax
    !iarm = !iarm + 1
    !opt_step_prev = !opt_step

```

```

!opt_step = .5*!opt_step
call mcz_opt_solve
wend

' *****
' Test for convergence
if !zero_loss = 1 then
' equal number of targets and controls, full rank derivative matrix
' => loss has to be less than !optconv
mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = _$opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)
if _$opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) < !optconv then
    %opt_converge = "yes"
endif
else
' !zero_loss = 0 => percentage change in loss from previous iteration has
' to be less than !optconv
!optpchloss = 1-(_$opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)/_$opt_loss_vec(!opttry))
mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = !optpchloss
if !optpchloss < !optconv then
    %opt_converge = "yes"
    mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
endif
endif

if !opttry = 1 and @abs(!optnonlin) < 1e-7 and !opt_step = 1 then
    %opt_converge = "yes"
    mce_opt_text.append At iteration 1, convergence assumed because model is linear
endif

if !opttry = !optmaxiter then
    mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, no convergence in {!optmaxiter} iterations
    !continue = @uiprompt("Maximum number of optimization iterations reached: Continue execu
    if !continue = 2 then
        stop
    else
        %opt_converge = "yes"
    endif
endif

if !optshow <> 4 then
    show mce_opt_stats
endif
wend

```

`endsub`

Defines:

`mcz_opt`, used in chunk 136.

Uses `mcz_opt_deriv` 160, `mcz_opt_solve` 162, and `solve` 217a.



## 6.2.16 main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints

147  $\langle$ main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 147 $\rangle \equiv$  (210)

```

subroutine mcz_opt_qp

' Main subroutine for optimal control simulations with inequality constraints
' (requires either R or matlab)

' The original problem:
',
'   choose x to minimize  $z = (y-y^*)'W(y-y^*)$ 
'   under the constraint  $Cy \geq c$ 
',
'   where at each iteration the linearized relationship between
'   the target variables (y) and instrument variables (x) is
'   given by
',
'    $y = B'x + k$ 
',
' The transformed problem: Solve out y
',
'   choose x to minimize  $z = x'BWB'x + 2(k-y^*)'WB'x + \text{const}$ 
'   under the constraint  $CB'x \geq c - Ck$ 
',
' The R command -- quadprog::solve.QP(D,d,A,b) -- solves
',
'   min  $[0.5 * x' D x - d'x]$  with the constraint  $A'x \geq b$ 
',
' The matlab command -- x = quadprog(D,d,A,b) -- solves
',
'   min  $[0.5 * x' D x + d'x]$  with the constraint  $Ax \leq b$ 
',
',
'           R           matlab
'   D       2BWB'       same
'   d'        $2(k-y^*)'WB'$     $-2(k-y^*)'WB'$ 
'   A'       CB'         -CB'
'   b       c-Ck         -(c-Ck)
',
'   where  $k = y - B'x$ 
',

' *****
' Create constraint matrices (C,c)-- dimensions are based on the number
' of periods in which the instruments are set (!ndrv) not the number of

```

```

' periods in which the loss function is evaluated (!nevl)

if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
  matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
  matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
  for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
    !terms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
    for !k = 1 to !terms
      %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
      !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
      !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
      for !l = 1 to !nevl
        _$_opt_cnstr_mat((!i-1)*!nevl+!l,(!j-1)*!nevl+!l) = !coef
      next
    next
    for !l = 1 to !nevl
      !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!terms+2))
      _$_opt_cnstr_vec((!i-1)*!nevl+!l) = !coef
    next
  next
else
  !nconstraints = 1
  matrix(!nevl,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
  matrix(!nevl,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
endif

' *****
' initialize counters and switches

!opttry = 0
%opt_converge = "no"
!optnonlin = 0
!optpchloss = 100

if %qpswitch = "r" and %xopen = "yes" then
  xopen(type=r, case=lower)
endif
if %qpswitch = "matlab" and %xopen = "yes" then
  xopen(type=m, case=lower)
endif

' *****
' compute an initial solution, without reference to any constraints

```

```

    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    !opt_step = 0
    !opt_step_prev = 0
    call mcz_opt_solve

' *****
' iterate to minimize loss
    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"

        !opttry = !opttry + 1

' *****
' compute instrument derivatives
    if %ideriv <> "no" then
        call mcz_opt_deriv
    endif

' *****
' compute qp matrices
    smpl %drvstart %drvend
    vector _$opt_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$opt_instrus))
    matrix _$qp_k_vec = _$opt_targ_vec - @transpose(_$opt_der_mat) * _$opt_instru_vec
    matrix qp_d_mat = 2 * _$opt_der_mat * _$opt_wt_mat * @transpose(_$opt_der_mat)
    matrix qp_d_vec = -2 * _$opt_der_mat * @transpose(_$opt_wt_mat) _
        * (_$qp_k_vec - _$opt_des_vec)

    matrix qp_a_mat = @transpose(_$opt_cnstr_mat * @transpose(_$opt_der_mat))
    matrix qp_b_vec = _$opt_cnstr_vec - _$opt_cnstr_mat _
        * (_$qp_k_vec - _$opt_des_vec)

    if !ndrv <> !nevl then
        qp_a_mat = @subextract(qp_a_mat,1,1,!ndrv,!ndrv)
        qp_b_vec = @subextract(qp_b_vec,1,1,!ndrv,1)
    endif

    xput qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec

' *****
' *****
' R code

    if %qpswitch = "r" then
        if ((!ndrv = 1) and (!noptinstrus = 1)) then
            xrun "dim(qp_d_mat) <- c(1,1);"

```

```

        xrun "dim(qp_a_mat) <- c(1,1);"
        xrun "dim(qp_d_vec) <- c(1,1);"
        xrun "dim(qp_b_vec) <- c(1,1);"
    endif
    xrun "QP.results <- quadprog::solve.QP(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec);"
    xrun "r_xhat <- QP.results$solution;"
    xrun "r_xhat <- as.matrix(r_xhat);"
    xget(type = matrix, name = _$qp_instru_vec) r_xhat
endif

' *****
' *****
' matlab code

if %qpswitch = "matlab" then
    xrun "qp_d_vec = -qp_d_vec;"
    xrun "qp_a_mat = -qp_a_mat;"
    xrun "qp_b_vec = -qp_b_vec;"
    xrun "aeq = [];"
    xrun "beq = [];"
    xrun "lb = [];"
    xrun "ub = [];"
    xrun "xx0 = [];"
    xrun "options = optimset('Algorithm','active-set','LargeScale','off');"
    xrun "matlab_xhat = quadprog(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec,aeq,beq,lb,ub);"
    xget matlab_xhat
    %tmp = matlab_xhat.@type
    if %tmp = "SCALAR" then
        matrix(1,1) _$qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
    else
        matrix _$qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
        delete matlab_xhat
    endif
endif

' *****
' *****

' values of target variables in qp (linearized) solution
matrix _$qp_targ_vec = @transpose(_$opt_der_mat)*_$qp_instru_vec + _$qp_k_vec

' values of target variables in original model
smpl %drvstart %drvend
matrix _$tt1 = @unvec(@vec(_$qp_instru_vec),!ndrv)
mtos(_$tt1,_$opt_instrus)
smpl %mcestart %mceend

```

```

    call mcz_sim(" ")
    smpl %evlstart %evlend
    matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
    matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
    !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
    setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+2,1,!opttry,0)

' convergence test is based on the maximum difference between
' the target variable values in the linearized and original models
!conv_stat = @max(abs(_$_qp_targ_vec-_$_opt_targ_vec))
mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,2) = !optloss
mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,4) = !conv_stat

if !optshow <> 4 then
    show mce_opt_stats
endif

if !conv_stat < !optconv then
    %opt_converge = "yes"
else
    endif
endif

wend

delete(noerr) qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec

```

endsub

Defines:

mcz\_opt\_qp, used in chunks 95 and 136.

Uses mcz\_opt\_deriv 160, mcz\_opt\_solve 162, mcz\_sim 114, solve 217a, xget 217a,  
and xrun 217a.

### 6.2.17 model consistent optimal time-consistent solution

152 *(model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 152)*≡

(210)

subroutine mcz\_opt\_tc

```

' 1. For a linear model, this code finds the exact time-consistent solution;
'   for a nonlinear model, the calculated solution is based on the
'   linearization of the model as given by the derivatives of the target
'   variables wrt the instrument variables along the baseline.
'
' 2. The basic data matrices include observations for (!nevl+!ndrv-1) periods,
'   which is also the interval over which tracking adds are required.
'
' 3. The simulation, derivative and evaluation periods are assumed to have the
'   same starting date
'
' 4. The solution method is backward induction; if there are no inequality constraints
'   the method executes in EViews (using matrices); if inequality constraints
'   are present, the method executes in EViews if there is a single
'   instrument and in Matlab or R (depending on the
'   setting of a switch) if there are multiple instruments (which requires
'   a quadratic programming algorithm),

' *****
' Create constraint matrices (C,c)-- dimensions are based on the fact that
' each policymaker sets the instruments for a single period

if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
  matrix(!nconstraints,!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
  matrix(!nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
  for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
    !nterms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
    for !k = 1 to !nterms
      %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
      !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
      !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
      _$_opt_cnstr_mat(!i,!j) = !coef
    next
    !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!nterms+2))
    _$_opt_cnstr_vec(!i) = !coef
  next
endif

```

```

' *****
' initial solution, instrument derivatives, and data matrices

' initial simulation
  smpl %mcestart %mceend
  if %terminal = "yes" then
    call mcz_sim("terminal")
    %terminal = "no"
  else
    call mcz_sim(" ")
  endif
  {%$_mod_b}.makegroup $_opt_targs_sols {%opt_targ_names}
  !ntot = !ndrv + !nevl - 1

' derivative matrices and submatrices
' $_opt_der_mat (this is the basic matrix; tc_dmat is its transpose)
' tc_dmat          effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !ntot periods of targets
' tc_dmat_short    effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !nevl periods of targets
' tc_dmat1         effect of period 1 instrument on !nevl periods of targets
' tc_dmat2         effect of period 1 instrument on period 1 targets
  if %ideriv <> "no" then
    !opttry = 1
    matrix $_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!nopttargs*!ntot,0)
    %evlend_b = %evlend
    %freq = @pagefreq
    !ntot1 = !ntot-1
    %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%simstart),!ntot1,%freq))
    'call dateshift(%simstart,%evlend,!ntot-1)
    call mcz_opt_deriv
    %evlend = %evlend_b
    matrix tc_dmat = @transpose($_opt_der_mat)
    matrix tc_dmat_short = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!ndrv*!noptinstrus,0)
    for !i = 1 to !toptinstrus
      for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
        !r1 = !ntot*(!j-1)+1
        !r2 = !r1 + !nevl - 1
        matplace(tc_dmat_short,@subextract(tc_dmat,!r1,!i,!r2,!i),!nevl*(!j-1)+1,!i)
      next
    next
    matrix tc_dmat1 = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!noptinstrus,0)
    for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
      matplace(tc_dmat1,@columnextract(tc_dmat_short,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1),1,!noptinstrus)
    next
    matrix tc_dmat2 = @filledmatrix(!noptinstrus,!nopttargs,0)
    for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus

```

```

        for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
            tc_dmat2(!i,!j) = tc_dmat1((!j-1)*!nevl+1,!i)
        next
    next
endif

' initial simulation again (is this necessary)
call mcz_sim(" ")

' data matrices
smp1 %simstart {%evlend} + !ndrv - 1
stom(_$opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat)
stom(_$opt_des,tc_ystarmat)
stom(_$opt_instrus,tc_xmat)
matrix tc_wmat = _$opt_wt_mat

' (no constraints) => eviews;
' (1 constraint -- single period) => eviews
' (multiple constraints) => R or Matlab
if %cnstrflag = "no" then
    %iii = "eviews"
else
    if !noptinstrus = 1 then
        %iii = "eviews"
    else
        %iii = %qpswitch
    endif
endif

scalar tc_iter = 0
scalar tc_stat = 100
scalar tc_itmax = !optmaxiter
scalar tc_conv = !optconv

' *****
' unconstrained backward induction => EViews

if %cnstrflag = "no" then
    while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax

        matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
        matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat

        for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
            !n1 = !i+!nevl-1

```



```

!n2 = !i+!ndrv-1
vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))

vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)

matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - !tcdamp*@inverse(tc_h)*tc_g
matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)
next

vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)

tc_iter = tc_iter + 1
if tc_iter > 1 then
    tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
endif

matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
wend
endif

' *****
' constrained backward induction

if %cnstrflag = "yes" then

    matrix tc_cmat = _$_opt_cnstr_mat
    matrix tc_cvec = _$_opt_cnstr_vec

' *****
' single-period constraint => eviews
if %iii = "eviews" then

    statusline constrained TC optimization in EViews

```

```

matrix mat_a = tc_dmat2*@transpose(tc_cmat)

while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax

    matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
    matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat

    for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
        !n1 = !i+!nevl-1
        !n2 = !i+!ndrv-1

        ' vectors of observations in the current loss and instrument periods
        vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
        vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
        vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
        vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
        vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))

        ' vector of target variable values based on current instrument values
        ' (ie, solve model)
        vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)

        ' unconstrained current optimal instrument value
        matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
        matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
        vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - @inverse(tc_h)*tc_g

        ' check constraint
        matrix tc_y1m = @unvec(tc_y1v,!nevl)
        matrix tc_ysm = @unvec(tc_ys0v,!nevl)
        matrix mattemp = @rowextract(tc_y1m,1) - (@transpose(tc_x0_1v)*tc_dmat2) -
        matrix mat_b = tc_cvec - tc_cmat*@transpose(mattemp)
        scalar testit = @sum(mat_b)/@sum(mat_a)
        if @sum(tc_x1_1v) < testit then
            tc_x1_1v = testit
            !tc_iter = tc_iter
        endif
        vector tc_x1_1v = (1-!tcdamp)*tc_x0_1v + !tcdamp* tc_x1_1v

        ' place current optimal instrument value in instrument matrix
        matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
        matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)

    next

```

```

' solve model
vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)

tc_iter = tc_iter + 1

if tc_iter > 1 then
    tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
endif

matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
wend
endif

' *****
' multiple constraints => R or matlab

if %iii = "r" or %iii = "matlab" then

    scalar tc_noptinstrus = !noptinstrus
    scalar tc_nopttargs = !nopttargs
    scalar tc_nevl = !nevl
    scalar tc_ndrv = !ndrv
    scalar tc_damp = !tcdamp

    if %xopen = "yes" then
        if %iii = "r" then
            xopen(type=r)
            xrun library("quadprog")
            %wd = "" + %rpath + ""
            xrun setwd({%wd})
        else
            xopen(type=m)
            xrun addpath {%mpath}
        endif
    endif

    xput tc_ymat tc_ystarmat tc_xmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
    xput tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_itmax tc_conv
    xput tc_dmat tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmat_short tc_damp

```

```

        if %iii = "r" then
            xrun source("tcoc_r.R")
        else
            xrun tcoc_m
        endif

        xget tc_xmat
        xget tc_ymat
        xget tc_iter
        !tc_iter = tc_iter

        if %xclose = "yes" then
            xclose
        endif

        delete(noerr) tc_ystarmat tc_dmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
        delete(noerr) tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_conv
        delete(noerr) tc_damp tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmatshort

        endif
    endif

' *****
' examine linearized solution

    if tc_iter >= tc_itmax then
        @uiprompt("iteration limit reached:  time-consistent iterations did not converge")
        'stop
    endif

' write instrument and target values back into their corresponding series
    smpl %evlstart {%evlstart} + !nevl + !ndrv - 2
    mtos(tc_xmat, $_opt_instrus)
    mtos(tc_ymat, $_opt_targs_sols)

' value of loss function for linearized solution
    smpl %evlstart %evlend
    matrix $_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert($_opt_targs_sols))
    matrix $_opt_gap_vec = $_opt_targ_vec - $_opt_des_vec
    !optloss_lin = @sum(@transpose($_opt_gap_vec)*$_opt_wt_mat*$_opt_gap_vec)
    stom($_opt_targs_sols, tc_ymat_lin)

' simulate EViews model
    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    call mcz_sim(" ")
    smpl %evlstart %evlend

```

```

stom(_$opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat_ev)
!maxdiff = @max(@abs(tc_ymat_ev-tc_ymat_lin))
matrix _$opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$opt_targs_sols))
matrix _$opt_gap_vec = _$opt_targ_vec - _$opt_des_vec
!optloss_ev = @sum(@transpose(_$opt_gap_vec)*_$opt_wt_mat*$_$opt_gap_vec)

!tciter = tc_iter
mce_opt_text.append time-consistent solution
mce_opt_text.append --- backward-induction iterations = !tciter
mce_opt_text.append --- TC damping factor = !tcdamp
mce_opt_text.append --- linearized solution loss = !optloss_lin
mce_opt_text.append --- EViews solution loss = !optloss_ev
mce_opt_text.append --- max diff btwn target vars in linear and EViews sols = !maxdiff

delete(noerr) tc_ymat tc_xmat tc_iter tc_ymat_lin tc_ymat_ev
delete(noerr) tc_itmax tc_stat

endsub

```

Defines:

mcz\_opt\_tc, used in chunks 95 and 136.

Uses dateshift 87, mcz\_opt\_deriv 160, mcz\_sim 114, solve 217a, xget 217a, and xrun 217a.

### 6.2.18 compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments

```

160  <compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 160>≡      (210)
      subroutine mcz_opt_deriv
      ,
      ' requires that the following be defined
      ,
      ' !optshow, mce_opt_stats, %evlstart, %evlend
      ' $_opt_targs_sols, !noptinstrus, $_opt_instrus, !drv,
      ' $_opt_ptrb_mat, $_opt_der_mat

      ' This subroutine computes the derivatives of the loss function targets wrt the instr

      smpl @all

      !optshow_bac = !optshow
      !optshow = 3

      'make a copy of the current values of the mce instruments;
      'they will be restored after each derivative is computed
      smpl %mcestart %mceend
      stom($_mce_instrus,$_instrus_bac)

      'do not reset terminal conditions when computing derivatives
      %set_terminal = "no"

      smpl %evlstart %evlend
      matrix $_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert($_opt_targs_sols))

      '*****
      'derivatives loop
      statusline computing instrument derivatives at optimization iteration !optry
      for !zi = 1 to !noptinstrus
        %instru_name = $_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!zi)
        for !zj = 1 to !ndrv
          !perturbit = $_opt_ptrb_mat(!zj,!zi)
          smpl %mcestart + !zj-1 %mcestart + !zj-1
          {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
          call mcz_sim(" ")
          smpl %evlstart %evlend
          matrix $_opt_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert($_opt_targs_sols))
          matplace($_opt_der_mat,@transpose($_opt_targ_dvec-$_opt_targ_vec)/!perturbit
          smpl %mcestart + !zj-1 %mcestart + !zj-1
          {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit
        'restore the original values of the add factors on

```

```
        'the z variable equations
    smpl %mcestart %mceend
    mtos(_$instrus_bac,$_mce_instrus)
    next
next

smpl %mcestart %mceend

!optshow = !optshow_bac

endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz_opt_deriv`, used in chunks 143, 147, and 152.  
Uses `mcz_sim` 114.

### 6.2.19 solve model consistent expectations model

```

162  <solve model consistent expectations model 162>≡ (210)
      subroutine mcz_opt_solve

' This subroutine first sets the instrument values, based on the current
' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the model

      statusline optimization solution, iteration !opttry
      smpl %mcestart %mceend

      'compute instrument values based on current direction and step size
      if !opttry > 0 then
        mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,3) = !opt_step
        smpl %drvstart %drvend
        for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
          vector _$_temp_adj = @subtract(_$_opt_direction,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1,1,!i*!ndrv,1)
          mtos(_$_temp_adj,_$_temp_ser)
          %y1 = _$_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
          {%y1} = {%y1} - (!opt_step-!opt_step_prev)*_$_temp_ser
        next
      endif

      'solve model
      if !opttry = 0 and %terminal = "yes" then
        call mcz_sim("terminal")
        %terminal = "no"
      else
        call mcz_sim(" ")
      endif

      if !opttry = 0 then
        {%$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_opt_targs_sols {%opt_targ_names}
      endif

      'compute value of loss function
      smpl %evlstart %evlend
      matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
      matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
      !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
      setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+3,1,!opttry,0)
      mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,2) = !optloss
      _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) = !optloss

      if !optshow = 2 then
        show mce_opt_stats

```



June 23, 2016

frbuseview.nw 163

endif

endsub

Defines:

`mcz_opt_solve`, used in chunks 143 and 147.

Uses `mcz_sim` 114.

### 6.2.20 convert mcz inequality constraints

```

164  <convert mcz inequality constraints 164>≡ (210)
      subroutine local mcz_constraints(svector sss, table ctable,string cvarnames)

      'This subroutine converts the inequality constraint text into a table

      ' subroutine arguments:
      ,
      ' inputs:
      ,
      '   sss                svector of constraint text
      ,
      ' outputs:
      ,
      '   $_opt_cnstr_tab    table of constraint variables and coefficients
      '   $_opt_cnstr_vars   string of names of variables in constraints

      ' *****

      !nconstraints = @rows(sss)
      scalar loc
      scalar sign

      for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
        %rrr = sss(!i)

        ' *****
        ' *****
        ' separate the left and right sides of each constraint

        !kk1 = @instr(%rrr,">=")
        if !kk1 = 0 then
          @uiprompt("each constraint must contain an ">=" term")
          stop
        endif
        %rrrl = @left(%rrr,!kk1-1)
        if @isempty(%rrrl) = 1 then
          @uiprompt("each constraint must contain terms to the left of ">="")
          stop
        endif
        %rrrr = @mid(%rrr,!kk1+2)
        if @isempty(%rrrr) = 1 then
          @uiprompt("each constraint must contain a value to the right of ">="")
          stop

```

```

endif

' *****
' *****
' process the left side of each constraint
'
' 1. split %rrrl into individual terms (based on + and - characters);
'    the main challenge concerns the first term, which may or may not
'    have a leading + or - attached
' 2. then split each term into 2 parts (based on * character)
' 3. then identify which part is coefficient and which is variable

!zz = 0      'flag to indicate end of left hand side of a constraint
!nterms = 1
vector(100) split_locs = 0
vector(100) split_signs = 0
%rrrlx = %rrrl

' find boundaries and signs of each term
while !zz = 0

' first term: determine whether its sign is explicit or implicit
if !nterms = 1 then
    call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
    if loc = 0 then                'implicit leading sign
        split_locs(!nterms) = 0
        split_signs(!nterms) = 1
    else
        %rrrl1 = @left(%rrrlx,loc-1)
        if @isempty(%rrrl1) = 1 then    'explicit leading sign
            split_locs(!nterms) = loc
            split_signs(!nterms) = sign
            %rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
        else                'implicit leading sign
            split_locs(!nterms) = 0
            split_signs(!nterms) = 1
        endif
    endif
endif
endif

call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
if loc = 0 then                'last term
    split_locs(!nterms+1) = @length(%rrrlx)
    !zz = 1
else

```

```

        split_locs(!terms+1) = loc
        split_signs(!terms+1) = sign
        %rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
    endif

    !terms = !terms + 1
wend

for !k = 2 to !terms
    split_locs(!k) = split_locs(!k-1) + split_locs(!k)
next

!terms = !terms - 1

' parse each term into coefficient times variable (they must
' appear in that order, although coefficients = 1 can be
' omitted), and store coefficient and variable in ctable
for !k = 1 to !terms
    %term = @mid(%rrrl,split_locs(!k)+1,split_locs(!k+1)-split_locs(!k)-1)
    if @isempty(%term) = 1 then
        @uiprompt("term is empty:  illegal constraint specification")
        stop
    else
        !ii = @instr(%term,"*")
        if !ii > 0 then
            %coef = @left(%term,!ii-1)
            !coef = split_signs(!k) * @val(%coef)
            %var = @mid(%term,!ii+1)
        else
            !coef = split_signs(!k)
            %var = %term
        endif
        %var = @trim(%var)
    endif

    ctable(!i,2*!k) = %var
    ctable(!i,2*!k+1) = !coef
    cvarnames = cvarnames + " " + %var
next

' *****
' *****
' process the right side of each constraint

```

```

        ctable(!i,2*!nterms+2) = @val(%rrrr)
        ctable(!i,1) = !nterms

    next

    cvarnames = @wunique(cvarnames)

```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`mcz.constraints`, used in chunk 136.

Uses `find_next_delimit` 168 and `left` 218.

### 6.2.21 shift left

167  $\langle \textit{shift left 167} \rangle \equiv$  (210)

```
subroutine local shiftleft(vector abc, scalar nshift)
```

```

    !rows = @rows(abc)
    vector v1 = @subextract(abc,1,1,nshift,1)
    vector v2 = @subextract(abc,nshift+1,1,!rows,1)
    matplace(abc,v2,1)
    matplace(abc,v1,!rows - nshift + 1)

```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`shiftleft`, used in chunk 114.

**6.2.22 find next delimiter**

```

168  (find next delimiter 168)≡ (210)
      subroutine local find_next_delimit(string %instring,scalar loc,scalar sign)

          !ttp = @instr(%instring,"+")
          !ttm = @instr(%instring,"-")
          if !ttp= 0 or !ttm = 0 then
              loc = !ttp + !ttm
              if !ttp = 0 and !ttm = 0 then
                  sign = 1
              else
                  sign = (!ttp > 0) - (!ttm > 0)
              endif
          else
              loc = !ttp*(!ttp < !ttm) + !ttm*(!ttm < !ttp)
              sign = (!ttp < !ttm) - (!ttm < !ttp)
          endif

          endsub

Defines:
      find_next_delimit, used in chunk 164.

```

### 6.2.23 load frbus with transformed subsidiary model

```

169  <load frbus with transformed subsidiary model 169>≡ (210)
      subroutine mce_load_frbus(string frbus_opts)

      ' take two corresponding FRB/US models (eg, stdver and pfver) and make
      ' the transformations needed to the second model so that the pair of
      ' models can be used with the mcz_solve_subs programs

      ' parameters
      '   required:  mce_vars, mod_b, mod_f, path_b, path_f
      '   optional:  allbut, only
      ,

      !allbut = 0
      !only = 0

      frbus_opts = @lower(frbus_opts)
      frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts," ","")
      frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts,","," ")
      frbus_opts = " " + frbus_opts + " "

      if @isempty(frbus_opts) = 0 then
        call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",frbus_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
          %mce_vars = @lower({%temp})
        else
          @uiprompt("Error:  mce_load_frbus sub requires the mce_vars argument")
          stop
        endif
        call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",frbus_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
          %mod_b = {%temp}
        else
          @uiprompt("Error:  mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_b argument")
          stop
        endif
        call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",frbus_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
          %mod_f = {%temp}
        else
          @uiprompt("Error:  mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_f argument")
          stop
        endif
        call mcz_equalopt("path_b",frbus_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then

```

```

        %path_b = {%temp}
    else
        @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_b argument")
        stop
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("path_f",frbus_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %path_f = {%temp}
    else
        @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_f argument")
        stop
    endif
    call mcz_equalopt("allbut",frbus_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !allbut = 1
        %allbut = {%temp}
    else
        call mcz_equalopt("only",frbus_opts)
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
            !only = 1
            %only = {%temp}
        endif
    endif
endif
endif

' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead
' passing in a list that may change in the future.

' Model consistent Asset Pricing
%s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f"

' Wages and prices
%s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "

' Others - all PAC expectations
%s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbz zxnfbz zynfbz"

if %mce_vars = "-all" then
    %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
endif
if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
    %mce_vars = %s_mcap
endif
if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
    %mce_vars = %s_wp
endif

```



```

    if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
        %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
    endif
    if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
        %tmp = %mce_vars
        %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
        %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
    endif
    string zvar_list = %mce_vars
    %zvars = %mce_vars

' backward-looking model

ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
if !allbut = 1 then
    %tmp = "allbut " + %allbut
    ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
endif
if !only = 1 then
    %tmp = %only
    ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
endif
if !allbut = 0 and !only = 0 then
    ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
endif

' model with mce equations and errors

ld_mce_eqs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mcename=%mod_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)
ld_mce_cfs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)

!nmcevars = @wcount(%mce_vars)
%evars = @wcross("e",%mce_vars)
for !i = 1 to !nmcevars
    %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
    %tmpw = " w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
    if %tmp <> "zyh" and %tmp <> "zyhp" and %tmp <> "zyht" then
        %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "=" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "-" + %tmpw
    else
        %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "= log(" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "/" + %tmpw + ")"
    endif
    {%mod_f}.append {%tmp1}
next

endsub

```

Defines:

    mce\_load\_frbus, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, and 95.

Uses ld\_frbus\_cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179, ld\_mce\_cfs 180b 181,  
    ld\_mce\_eqs 183 184, ld\_some\_eqs 188 189, mcz\_equalopt 111a, zdivgr 218, zecd 218,  
    zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218,  
    zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218,  
    zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218,  
    zyht 218, and zynid 218.

## 6.2.24 create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model

```

173  <create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 173>≡      (210)
      subroutine make_frbus_mcevars(string frbus_mcevars)

      ' Create data for the w and e variables in the operational forward looking
      ' model over the workfile sample currently in effect
      ,
      ' The input string contains the names of the expectations variables that
      ' are to have MC solutions

      %mce_vars = frbus_mcevars

      ' The user may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
      ' passing in a list that may change in the future.

      ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
      %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 zpic58"

      ' Wages and prices
      %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "

      ' Others - all PAC expectations
      %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbz zxnfbz zyh zyhp zyht

      if %mce_vars = "-all" then
        %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
      endif
      if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
        %mce_vars = %s_mcap
      endif
      if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
        %mce_vars = %s_wp
      endif
      if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
        %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
      endif
      if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
        %tmp = %mce_vars
        %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
        %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
      endif

      ' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations

```

```

      smpl @all
      for !i = 1 to @wcount(%mce_vars)
        %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
        %wtmp = "w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
        %wtmp_aerr = %wtmp + "_aerr"
        %etmp = "e" + @word(%mce_vars,!i)
        series {%wtmp} = {%tmp}
        series {%wtmp_aerr} = 0
        series {%etmp} = 0
      next

      endsub

```

Defines:

make\_frbus\_mcevars, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, and 95.

Uses zdivgr 218, zecd 218, zeco 218, zeh 218, zgap05 218, zgap10 218, zgap30 218, zgapc2 218, zlhp 218, zpi10 218, zpi10f 218, zpi5 218, zpib5 218, zpic30 218, zpic58 218, zpicxfe 218, zpieci 218, zrff10 218, zrff30 218, zrff5 218, zvpd 218, zvpi 218, zvps 218, zyh 218, zyhp 218, zyht 218, and zynid 218.

# File Contents

Notice that I've had to change underscores in file and directory names when I create them with noweb. I use the "setup.sh" bash script to create the directory structure, and the "check.sh" bash script to compare the renamed Eview files to the originals. I have to ignore white space in the comparison because the original source files are not consistent with using either Microsoft or Linux line ending characters.

## 6.3 scripts

### 6.3.1 setup script

175

*<setup.sh 175>*≡

```
mkdir -p srcEview/{frbus.package,mce.solve.package,state.space.package}
```

```
mkdir -p srcEview/frbus.package/{addins,programs,subs}
```

```
mkdir -p srcEview/frbus.package/addins/{ld.frbus.cfs,ld.frbus.eq,ld.mce.cfs,ld.mce.eq,ld.some
```

This code is written to file `setup.sh`.

Uses `solve 217a` and `varinfo 217b`.

### 6.3.2 check script

176 *<check.sh 176>*≡

```
cfile=frbus_package/mods/stdver_coeffs.txt; ofile=stdver.coeffs.txt; echo "XX $cfile
cfile=frbus_package/mods/stdver_eqs.txt; ofile=stdver.eqs.txt; echo "XX $cfile XX"; c
cfile=frbus_package/mods/stdver_varinfo; ofile=stdver.varinfo; echo "XX $cfile XX"; c
cfile=data_only_package/variables.txt; ofile=variables.txt; echo "XX $cfile XX"; diff
```

```
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_frbus_cfs/ld_frbus_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.packag
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_frbus_eqs/ld_frbus_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.packag
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_mce_cfs/ld_mce_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ac
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_mce_eqs/ld_mce_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ac
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_some_eqs/ld_some_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/
cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_varinfo/ld_varinfo.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ac
cfile=frbus_package/addins/regadd.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg
cfile=frbus_package/programs/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/exar
cfile=frbus_package/programs/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/exar
cfile=frbus_package/programs/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/exar
cfile=frbus_package/programs/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/exar
cfile=frbus_package/programs/ocpolicy.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocp
cfile=frbus_package/programs/pings.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.p
cfile=frbus_package/programs/plot_resids.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/p
cfile=frbus_package/programs/stochsim.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stoc
cfile=frbus_package/subs/master_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master
cfile=frbus_package/subs/mce_solve_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce
cfile=mce_solve_package/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg;
cfile=mce_solve_package/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg;
cfile=mce_solve_package/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg;
cfile=mce_solve_package/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg;
cfile=mce_solve_package/example5.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg;
cfile=mce_solve_package/mce_solve_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.s
cfile=state_space_package/data_transformations.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.packag
cfile=state_space_package/estimation_code.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/est
cfile=state_space_package/frbus_supply_estimation.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.pac
cfile=state_space_package/frbus_supply_filter.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package
cfile=state_space_package/initial_values.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/init
```

This code is written to file *check.sh*.

Uses *data\_transformations* 214c, *estimation\_code* 214d, *example1* 194c 213a, *example2* 195a 213b, *example3* 195b 213c, *example4* 195c 213d, *example5* 214a, *frbus\_supply\_estimation* 214e, *frbus\_supply\_filter* 215a, *initial\_values* 81 215b, *ld\_frbus\_cfs* 177a 177b, *ld\_frbus\_eqs* 178b 179, *ld\_mce\_cfs* 180b 181, *ld\_mce\_eqs* 183 184, *ld\_some\_eqs* 188 189, *ld\_varinfo* 192 193, *master\_library* 208a, *mce\_solve\_library* 209 214b, *ocpolicy* 195d, *pings* 196a, *plot\_resids* 202, *regadd* 194b, *solve* 217a, *stochsim* 206a, and *varinfo* 217b.

## 6.4 frbus package

### 6.4.1 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg

177a  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg 177a} \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{load frbus coefficients 177b} \rangle$

$\langle \text{load frbus coefficients call 178a} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg`.

Defines:

`ld.frbus.cfs`, used in chunks 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, 178a, 194b, and 203.

177b  $\langle \text{load frbus coefficients 177b} \rangle \equiv$  (177a)  
`subroutine ld_frbus_cfs(string %mname, string %mpath)`

'Load coefficients for frbus version %mname from a text file in directory %mpath  
 'that has been previously created by the script eq\_docs2eviews.

```
%cpath = %mpath + %mname + "_coeffs.txt"
delete(noerr) coefpath
text coefpath
coefpath.append(file) %cpath
svector coefpathv = coefpath.@svectornb
```

```
for !i = 1 to 900
  svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
  %y1 = cofname(1)
  if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
    exitloop
  endif
  %y2 = cofname(2)
  %y3 = cofname(3)
  coef({%y2}) {%y1}
  {%y1}.fill {%y3}
next
```

`endsub`

Defines:

`ld.frbus.cfs`, used in chunks 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, 178a, 194b, and 203.

```

178a  <load frbus coefficients call 178a>≡ (177a)
      if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 then
        @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_cfs requires model name and model path")
        stop
      endif

      %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %mname = %temp
      endif
      %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %mpath = %temp
      endif

      call ld_frbus_cfs(%mname, %mpath)
Uses ld_frbus_cfs 177a 177b.

```

#### 6.4.2 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg

```

178b  <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg 178b>≡
      <load frbus equations 179>

```

```

      <load frbus equations call 180a>

```

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg`.  
 Defines:

```

      ld_frbus_eqs, used in chunks 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, 180a, 194b, and 203.

```



```

179  <load frbus equations 179>≡ (178b)
      subroutine ld_frbus_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath)

      'Create eviews model %mname and load it with the equations for frbus version
      '%mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
      'by the script eq_docs2eviews.

      %epath = %mpath + %mname
      if @fileexist(%epath) <> 1 then
        %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
      endif
      delete(noerr) eqtext
      text eqtext
      eqtext.append(file) %epath
      svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb

      model {%mname}

      !eqnum = 0
      %eqcode = " "

      for !i = 1 to 3000
        %y = eqtextv(!i)
        if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
          'string is not blank
          if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
            %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
            {%mname}.append {%x}
            exitloop
          endif

          !k = @instr(%y,":")
          if !k > 0 then
            'string contains the start of a new equation
            !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
            if !eqnum > 0 then
              %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
              {%mname}.append {%x}
            endif
            %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)

          else
            'string contains the continuation of an equation
            %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
          endif
        endif
      endfor

```

```

        endif
    next

```

```

endsub

```

Defines:

ld\_frbus\_eqs, used in chunks 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, 180a, 194b, and 203.

```

180a  <load frbus equations call 180a>≡ (178b)
      if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 then
          @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_eqs requires model name and model path")
          stop
      endif

      %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
          %mname = %temp
      endif
      %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
          %mpath = %temp
      endif

      call ld_frbus_eqs(%mname, %mpath)

```

Uses ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179.

### 6.4.3 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg

```

180b  <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg 180b>≡
      <load mce coefficients 181>

      <load mce coefficients call 182>

```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg.

Defines:

ld\_mce\_cfs, used in chunks 169, 176, 182, and 194b.

```

181  <load mce coefficients 181>≡ (180b)
      subroutine ld_mce_cfs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mceeqs)

      'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
      'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
      'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
      'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
      'with w.

      'Load coefficients for frbus version %pfname from a text file in directory %pfpath
      'that has been previously created by the script eq_docs2evIEWS. Only those
      'coefficient vectors whose names are in the string %mceeqs are stored.

      %cpath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_coeffs.txt"
      delete(noerr) coefpathpv
      text coefpathpv
      coefpathpv.append(file) %cpath
      svector coefpathv = coefpathpv.@svectornb

      for !i = 1 to 900
        svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
        %y1 = cofname(1)
        if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
          exitloop
        endif
        %y2 = cofname(2)
        %y3 = cofname(3)
        for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
          %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
          %z1 = @mid(%y1,3)
          if %z = %z1 then
            %y1 = @replace(%y1,"z","w")
            coef({%y2}) {%y1}
            {%y1}.fill {%y3}
            exitloop
          endif
        next
      next

      endsub

```

Defines:

ld\_mce\_cfs, used in chunks 169, 176, 182, and 194b.

```

182  (load mce coefficients call 182)≡ (180b)
      if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 or @len(@option(3)) < 1 then
        @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_cfs requires four parameters: pf model name, pf model pat
        stop
      endif

      %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %pfname = %temp
      endif
      %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %pfpath = %temp
      endif
      %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %mceeqs = %temp
      endif
      '      ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations
      '      ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
      '      ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
      %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10
      '      ' Wages and prices
      %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
      '      ' Others - all PAC expectations
      %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd z
      '      if %mceeqs = "-all" then
      %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
      '      endif
      '      if %mceeqs = "-mcap" then
      %mceeqs = %s_mcap
      '      endif
      '      if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
      %mceeqs = %s_wp
      '      endif
      '      if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
      %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
      '      endif
      '      if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
      %tmp = %mceeqs
      %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
      %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
      '      endif
      '      string zvar_list = %mceeqs
      '      scalar nzvars = @wcount(%mceeqs)
      '      group zvars {%mceeqs}

```

```
call ld_mce_cfs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mceeqs)
```

Uses `ld_mce_cfs` 180b 181, `zdivgr` 218, `zecd` 218, `zeco` 218, `zeh` 218, `zgap05` 218, `zgap10` 218, `zgap30` 218, `zgapc2` 218, `zlhp` 218, `zpi10` 218, `zpi10f` 218, `zpi5` 218, `zpi5` 218, `zpi5` 218, `zpic30` 218, `zpicxf` 218, `zpieci` 218, `zrff10` 218, `zrff30` 218, `zrff5` 218, `zvdp` 218, `zvpi` 218, `zvps` 218, `zyh` 218, `zyhp` 218, `zyht` 218, and `zynid` 218.

#### 6.4.4 `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg`

183 `<srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg 183>≡`  
`<load mce equations 184>`  
`<load mce equations call 187>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg`.  
 Defines:

`ld_mce_eqs`, used in chunks 169, 176, 187, and 194b.

```

184  (load mce equations 184)≡ (183)
      subroutine ld_mce_eqs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mcename, string %mceeqs

      'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
      'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
      'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
      'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
      'with w.

      'Create evIEWS model %mcename and load it with the equations for frbus version
      '%pfname that are in a text file in directory %pfpath that was previously created
      'by the script eq_docs2evIEWS. Only those equations whose names are in the
      'string %mceeqs are included.

      ' revised 2/11/13 to add a check that version %pfname contains an equation for each
      ' name in %mceeqs

      %epath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_eqs.txt"
      delete(noerr) eqtextp
      text eqtextp
      eqtextp.append(file) %epath
      svector eqtextpv = eqtextp.@svectornb

      %coded = " "

      model {%mcename}

      !eqnum = 0
      %eqnew = " "
      %eqold = " "
      %eqcode = " "
      %eqcodeold = " "

      for !i = 1 to 3000

          %appendit = "no"
          %exitloop = "no"
          %y = eqtextpv(!i)
          if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
              'string is not blank
              if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
                  'string contains end-of-file flag
                  %appendit = "yes"
                  %exitloop = "yes"
                  %eqold = %eqnew

```

```

        %eqcodeold = %eqcode
    endif

    !k = @instr(%y,":")
    if !k > 0 then
        'string contains the start of a new equation
        %appendit = "yes"
        !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
        if !eqnum > 0 then
            %eqold = %eqnew
            %eqcodeold = %eqcode
        endif
        %eqnew = @left(%y,!k-1)
        %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
    else
        'string contains the continuation of an equation
        %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
    endif

    if %appendit = "yes" then
        'add equation to model only if it is one with mce expectations
        for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
            %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
            if %z = %eqold then
                %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
                %x = @replace(%x,"z","w")
                {%mcename}.append {%x}
                %coded = %coded + " " + %z
            exitloop
            endif
        next
    endif

    if %exitloop = "yes" then
        exitloop
    endif

    endif
next

' check that model %mcename contains an equation for each variable in %mceeqs
!j = @wcount(%mceeqs)
!k = @wcount(%coded)
if !j <> !k then
    %z = @wnotin(@lower(%mceeqs),@lower(%coded))
    %errstring = "Error in ld_mce_eqs addin: Model " + %mcename

```

```
%errstring = %errstring + " does not contain equation(s) for variable(s): " + %  
%errstring = %errstring + ". Execution stopped."  
@uiprompt(%errstring)  
stop  
endif
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

`ld.mce_eqs`, used in chunks 169, 176, 187, and 194b.



```

187  <load mce equations call 187>= (183)
    if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 or @len(@option(3)) < 1 or @len(@option(4)) < 1
        @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_eqs requires five parameters: pf model name, pf model path, mce mod
        stop
    endif

    %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %pfname = %temp
    endif
    %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %pfpath = %temp
    endif
    %temp = @equaloption("mcename")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %mcename = %temp
    endif
    %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
    if @len(%temp) >0 then
        %mceeqs = %temp
    endif
    '      ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
    '      ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
    '      ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
    '      %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 "
    '      ' Wages and prices
    '      %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
    '      ' Others - all PAC expectations
    '      %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxbd zxbs zxbi zyh
    '      if %mceeqs = "-all" then
    '          %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
    '      endif
    '      if %mceeqs = "-mcap" then
    '          %mceeqs = %s_mcap
    '      endif
    '      if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
    '          %mceeqs = %s_wp
    '      endif
    '      if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
    '          %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
    '      endif
    '      if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
    '          %tmp = %mceeqs
    '          %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
    '          %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)

```

```
call ld_mce_eqs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mcename, %mceeqs)
```

#### 6.4.5 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg

ld\_some\_eqs, used in chunks 169, 176, 191, and 194b.

```

189  <load some equations 189>≡ (188)
      subroutine ld_some_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath, string %eqnames)

      ' Create evIEWS model %mname and load it with selected equations for frbus version
      ' %mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
      ' by the script eq_docs2evIEWS. Only those equations whose names match or do not match the
      ' equation names in the string %eqnames are included. If the first "word" in %eqnames is
      ' "allbut", then all equations but those listed will be included.

      '*****
      'parse equation string and put equation names in a table

      %allbut = "no"

      string zlist = " "
      zlist = zlist + %eqnames
      zlist = @trim(zlist)
      if @isempty(zlist) = 1 then
        @uiprompt("Error: input string to subroutine load_selected_equtions is empty!!")
        stop
      endif

      if @wfind(@upper(zlist),"ALLBUT") = 1 then
        %allbut = "yes"
        zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"ALLBUT")
        zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"allbut")
      endif

      '*****
      'parse equation file

      %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
      delete(noerr) eqtext
      text eqtext
      eqtext.append(file) %epath
      svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb

      model {%mname}

      !eqnum = 0
      %eqnew = " "
      %eqold = " "
      %eqcode = " "
      %eqcodeold = " "

```

```

for !i = 1 to 3000
  %appendit = "no"
  %exitloop = "no"
  %y = eqtextv(!i)
  if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
    'string is not blank
    if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
      %appendit = "yes"
      %exitloop = "yes"
      %eqold = %eqnew
      %eqcodeold = %eqcode
    endif

    !k = @instr(%y,":")
    if !k > 0 then
      'string contains the start of a new equation
      %appendit = "yes"
      !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
      if !eqnum > 0 then
        %eqold = %eqnew
        %eqcodeold = %eqcode
      endif
      %eqnew = @left(%y,!k-1)
      %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)

    else
      'string contains the continuation of an equation
      %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
    endif

    if %appendit = "yes" then
      'check whether equation should be added to model
      !zswitch = 0
      for !j = 1 to @wcount(zlist)
        %z = @lower(@word(zlist,!j))
        if %z = %eqold then
          !zswitch = 1
        endif
        if %allbut = "no" and !zswitch = 1 then
          %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
          {%mname}.append {%x}
          exitloop
        endif
        if %allbut = "yes" and !j = @wcount(zlist) and !zswitch = 0 then
          %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")

```

```

        {%mname}.append {%x}
      endif
    next
  endif

  if %exitloop = "yes" then
    exitloop
  endif

endif
next

```

endsub

Defines:

ld\_some\_eqs, used in chunks 169, 176, 191, and 194b.

```

191  <load some equations call 191>≡ (188)
    if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 or @len(@option(3)) < 1 then
      @uiprompt("Error: ld_some_eqs requires model name and model path and eqnames")
      stop
    endif

    %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
      %mname = %temp
    endif
    %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
      %mpath = %temp
    endif
    %temp = @equaloption("eqnames")
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
      %eqnames = %temp
    endif

    call ld_some_eqs(%mname, %mpath, %eqnames)
  Uses ld_some_eqs 188 189.

```

**6.4.6   `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg`**

192      `<srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg 192>≡`  
         `<load variable information 193>`

`<load variable information call 194a>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg`.  
Defines:

`ld.varinfo`, used in chunks 40, 176, 194, and 203.

The ld\_varinfo subroutine parses the frbus\_package/mods/stdver\_varinfo file.

```

193  <load variable information 193>≡ (192)
      subroutine ld_varinfo(string %pathname)

      'Load varinfo information from %pathname in strings

      text vinfo_text
      vinfo_text.append(file) %pathname
      svector varinfo = vinfo_text.@svectornb
      string vinfo_vname = " "
      string vinfo_vtype = " "
      string vinfo_vrule = " "
      string vinfo_sector = " "
      string vinfo_stoch = " "
      string vinfo_decomp = " "
      for !i = 1 to 900
        %y1 = varinfo(!i)
        !ss = @instr(%y1," ")
        %vname = @mid(%y1,!ss+1,8)
        %vname = @rtrim(%vname)
        %vtype = @mid(%y1,!ss+107,1)
        %vrule = @mid(%y1,!ss+109,1)
        if %vrule = " " then
          %vrule = "0"
        endif
        %sector = @mid(%y1,!ss+120,1)
        if %sector = " " then
          %sector = "0"
        endif
        %stoch = @mid(%y1,!ss+128,2)
        %decomp = @mid(%y1,!ss+135,2)
        if %vname = "ZZZBLANK" then
          scalar vinfo_size = !i-1
          exitloop
        endif
        vinfo_vname = vinfo_vname + " " + %vname
        vinfo_vtype = vinfo_vtype + " " + %vtype
        vinfo_vrule = vinfo_vrule + " " + %vrule
        vinfo_sector = vinfo_sector + " " + %sector
        vinfo_stoch = vinfo_stoch + " " + %stoch
        vinfo_decomp = vinfo_decomp + " " + %decomp
      next

      endsub

```

Defines:

ld\_varinfo, used in chunks 40, 176, 194, and 203.

Uses decomp 217b, sector 217b, stoch 217b, varinfo 217b, vinfo\_decomp 217b, vinfo\_sector 217b, vinfo\_stoch 217b, vinfo\_text 217b, vinfo\_vname 217b, vinfo\_vrule 217b, vinfo\_vtype 217b, vname 217b, vrule 217b, and vtype 217b.

```
194a  <load variable information call 194a>≡ (192)
      if @len(@option(1)) < 1 then
        @uiprompt("Error: ld_varinfo requires varinfo path")
        stop
      endif

      %temp = @equaloption("pathname")
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %pathname = %temp
      endif
```

call ld\_varinfo(%pathname)

Uses ld\_varinfo 192 193 and varinfo 217b.

#### 6.4.7 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg

```
194b  <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg 194b>≡
      addin(proc="ld_frbus_eqs",desc="Load FRB/US equations") ".\ld_frbus_eqs/ld_frbus_eqs.prg"
      addin(proc="ld_frbus_cfs",desc="Load FRB/US coefficients") ".\ld_frbus_cfs/ld_frbus_cfs.prg"
      addin(proc="ld_mce_eqs",desc="Load MCE equations") ".\ld_mce_eqs/ld_mce_eqs.prg"
      addin(proc="ld_mce_cfs",desc="Load MCE coefficients") ".\ld_mce_cfs/ld_mce_cfs.prg"
      addin(proc="ld_some_eqs",desc="Load some FRB/US equations") ".\ld_some_eqs/ld_some_eqs.prg"
      addin(proc="ld_varinfo",desc="Load variable information file") ".\ld_varinfo/ld_varinfo.prg"
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg.

Defines:

regadd, used in chunk 176.

Uses ld\_frbus\_cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179, ld\_mce\_cfs 180b 181, ld\_mce\_eqs 183 184, ld\_some\_eqs 188 189, and ld\_varinfo 192 193.

#### 6.4.8 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg

```
194c  <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 194c>≡
      <frbus example1 3>
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg.

Defines:

example1, used in chunk 176.



#### 6.4.9 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg

195a  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg } 195a \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{frbus example2 } 7 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg`.

Defines:

`example2`, used in chunk 176.

#### 6.4.10 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg

195b  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg } 195b \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{frbus example3 } 11 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg`.

Defines:

`example3`, used in chunk 176.

#### 6.4.11 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg

195c  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg } 195c \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{frbus example4 } 17 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg`.

Defines:

`example4`, used in chunk 176.

#### 6.4.12 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg

195d  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg } 195d \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{frbus ocpolicy } 23 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg`.

Defines:

`ocpolicy`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.4.13 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg

```

196a  <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg 196a>≡
      <simulate six ping simulations, aka simple IRFs 31>
      '*****
      '*****
      '*****
      <copy it 196b>

      '*****
      '*****
      '*****
      <plot it 197>

      '*****
      '*****
      '*****
      <graph it 198>

```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg.

Defines:

pings, used in chunks 31 and 176.

```

196b  <copy it 196b>≡ (196a)
      subroutine copyit

      smpl %simstart %simend
      series picnia_{%ping} = picnia{%suf} - picnia
      series pic4_{%ping} = pic4{%suf} - pic4
      series picx4_{%ping} = picx4{%suf} - picx4
      series picxfe_{%ping} = picxfe{%suf} - picxfe
      series xgap2_{%ping} = xgap2{%suf} - xgap2
      series lur_{%ping} = lur{%suf} - lur
      series rff_{%ping} = rff{%suf} - rff

      endsub

```

Defines:

copyit, used in chunk 31.

Uses lur 218, pic4 218, picnia 218, picx4 218, picxfe 218, rff 218, and xgap2 218.

197

 $\langle plot\ it\ 197 \rangle \equiv$ 

(196a)

```
subroutine plotit(string %grname, string %width, string %height, string %var1, string %title,
```

```

graph {%grname}.line {%var1} zero
{%grname}.options size({%width},{%height}) -inbox
{%grname}.setelem(1) linewidth(3) linepattern(1) linecolor(black)
{%grname}.addtext(t,just(c),font(9)) %title
{%grname}.addtext(0,-.15,font(8),just("r")) %units
{%grname}.datelabel format(yyyy)
{%grname}.legend -display
{%grname}.axis(b) font(9)
{%grname}.axis(l) font(9)

```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

```
plotit, used in chunk 198.
```

```

198  <graph it 198>≡ (196a)
      subroutine graphit

      smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
      series zero = 0

      delete(noerr) gr_*

' RFF ping

      %ping = "rff"

      %name = %ping + "a"
      %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
      %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Funds Rate"
      call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

      %name = %ping + "b"
      %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
      %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Funds Rate"
      call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

      %name = %ping + "c"
      %var1 = "rff_" + %ping
      %tt = "Response of Funds Rate\rto Funds Rate"
      call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

      graph gr_{%ping}.merge  {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
      gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

' EGFO ping

      %ping = "eg"

      %name = %ping + "a"
      %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
      %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Federal Purch"
      call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

      %name = %ping + "b"
      %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
      %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Federal Purch"

```

```

call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "egfn_shr_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Federal Purch\erto Federal Purch"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent of GDP")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge  {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

' REQP ping

%ping = "reqp"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\erto Equity Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\erto Equity Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "reqp_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Equity Premium\erto Equity Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge  {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

' POILR ping

%ping = "oil"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\erto Oil Price"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping

```

```

%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Oil Price"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "poil_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Oil Price\rto Oil Price"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"dollars per barrel")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

' HMFPT ping

%ping = "hmfp"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Growth"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Growth"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "hmftp_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of MFP Growth\rto MFP Growth"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

' MFPT ping

%ping = "mfp"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Level"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

```

```

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Level"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "mfpt_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of MFP Level\rto MFP Level"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

%ping = "prem"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Term Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Term Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "rg10p_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Term Premium (10-year) \rto Term Premium"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)

%ping = "exch"

%name = %ping + "a"
%var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Exchange Rate"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

%name = %ping + "b"
%var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Exchange Rate"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")

```

```

%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "fpxr_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Exchange Rate \rto Exchange Rate"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
endsub

```

Defines:

**graphit**, used in chunk 31.

Uses **plotit** 197, **reqp** 218, and **rff** 218.

#### 6.4.14 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg

202  $\langle$ srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 202 $\rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle$ plot historical residuals of key equations 203 $\rangle$

```

' *****
' *****
 $\langle$ find variable description 205 $\rangle$ 

```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg.

Defines:

**plot\_resids**, used in chunk 176.



```

203  <plot historical residuals of key equations 203>≡ (202)
      ' Program to plot the historical residuals of key FRB/US equations
      ,
      ' Each residual has the same units of measurement as the
      ' the left hand side of its equation

      ' *****
      ' Initial filename and parameter settings
      ' *****

      ' Subroutines
      include ../subs/master_library

      ' Workfile
      %wfstart = "1975q1"
      %wfend = "2030q4"
      %mainpage = "main"
      wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}

      ' FRB/US model name and location
      %varmod = "stdver"
      %varpath = "../mods/"
      %varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"

      ' Input database
      %dbin = "../data/longbase"

      ' Plot range
      %plotstart = "1980q1"
      %plotend = "2014q2"

      ' *****
      ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients
      ' *****

      ' Load equations and coefficients
      ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
      ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
      ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)

      ' Load data
      dbopen %dbin as longbase
      smpl %plotstart-12 %plotend
      fetch(d=longbase) *

```

```

' Set _aerr variables to zero
  smpl @all
  {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
  call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
  call group2zero("endog_aerr")

' Compute baseline tracking add factors
  smpl %plotstart %plotend
  {%varmod}.addassign @all
  {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

' *****
' Plots
' *****

%plotvars = "eco ecd eh epd epi eps ki ex emo lfpr lhp leo lww"
%plotvars = %plotvars + " picxfe pieci pcer pcfrr pcengr"
%plotvars = %plotvars + " rg5p rg10p rg30p rbbbp rcar rme rtbe rcgain"
%plotvars = %plotvars + " ynidn yniin yhibn"

smpl %plotstart %plotend
series zero = 0

spool plot_vars

!counter = 0
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%plotvars)
  %vname = @word(%plotvars,!i)
  call find_var_description
  !counter = !counter + 1
  graph gr_{%vname}.line zero {%vname}_a
  %title = %vname + ": " + %desc
  gr_{%vname}.addtext(t) %title
  gr_{%vname}.axis range(minmax)
  gr_{%vname}.options size(4,3)
  gr_{%vname}.legend -display

  plot_vars.append gr_{%vname}
  %index = "000" + @str(!counter)
  if !counter < 100 then
    %index = @right(%index,2)
  else
    %index = @right(%index,3)
  endif
  %name = "untitled" + %index
  plot_vars.name {%name} {%vname}

```

next

plot\_vars.display

Uses dbopen 217a, ecd 218, eco 218, eh 218, emo 218, epd 218, epi 218, eps 218, ex 218, fetch 217a, find\_var.description 205, group2zero 89a, groupnew 90, ki 218, ld\_frbus\_cfs 177a 177b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 178b 179, ld\_varinfo 192 193, left 218, leo 218, lfpr 218, lhp 218, lww 218, master\_library 208a, pcengr 218, pcer 218, pcfr 218, picxfe 218, pieci 218, rbbbp 218, rcar 218, rcgain 218, rg10p 218, rg30p 218, rg5p 218, rme 218, rtbe 218, varinfo 217b, vname 217b, wfcreate 217a, yhibn 218, ynidn 218, and yniin 218.

This was originally written in Fortran! Look at the *ii*, *jj*, *kk* variable names. I had forgotten about that from when I briefly helped the programmer debug the original model some 45 years ago. Who would have expected nostalgia from something so prosaic. I never saw the original source code because I was working with only a hex dump.

205     $\langle \text{find variable description } 205 \rangle \equiv$  (202)

```
subroutine find_var_description

  for !j = 1 to 500
    %vline = vinfo_text.@line(!j)
    !eq = @instr(%vline,"=")
    !zz = !eq-4
    %name = @lower(@rtrim(@ltrim(@mid(%vline,4,!zz))))

    if %vname = %name then
      %desc = " "
      !ii = !eq + 1
      !kk = @instr(%vline,"sector_")
      if !kk = 0 then
        !kk = @instr(%vline,"X.")
        !jj = !kk - 1 - !ii
      else
        !jj = !kk - 7 - !ii
      endif
      %desc = @rtrim(@mid(%vline,!ii,!jj))
      exitloop
    endif
  next
endsub
```

Defines:

find\_var.description, used in chunk 203.  
Uses vinfo\_text 217b and vname 217b.

## 6.4.15 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg

206a  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg 206a} \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{stochastic simulations under variable expectations 40} \rangle$

```

'*****
'*****
'*****
'*****
'Subroutines

'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{form table 206b} \rangle$ 

'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{make statistics 207} \rangle$ 

```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg.

Defines:

stochsim, used in chunk 176.

206b  $\langle \text{form table 206b} \rangle \equiv$  (206a)

```

subroutine tableform(string %tabname, string %nrows)

table(@val(%nrows),9) {%tabname}

{%tabname}.setwidth(1:9) 8
{%tabname}.setjust(ric1:r{%nrows}c9) right
{%tabname}.setformat(r2c2:r{%nrows}c9) f.3
{%tabname}(1,1) = "qtr"
{%tabname}(1,2) = "baseline"
{%tabname}(1,3) = "mean"
{%tabname}(1,4) = "median"
{%tabname}(1,5) = "stdev"
{%tabname}(1,6) = "90%-low"
{%tabname}(1,7) = "90%-hi"
{%tabname}(1,8) = "70%-low"
{%tabname}(1,9) = "70%-hi"

```

endsub

Defines:

tableform, used in chunk 40.

```

207  <make statistics 207>≡ (206a)
      subroutine makestats(string %trkname)

          %trkmat = %trkname + "_mat"
          %statsmat = %trkname + "_stats"
          matrix(nqtrs,8) {%statsmat}

          smpl {%simstart} {%simend}

          ' loop over each simulation quarter
          for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
              ' put simulation replications for this quarter into matrix tempm1
              matrix tempm1 = @sort(@rowextract({%trkmat},!ii2))
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,1) = {%trkname}(!lqtr + !ii2)
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,2) = @mean(tempm1)
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,3) = tempm1(1,@floor(.50*nrepl))
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,4) = @stdev(tempm1)
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,5) = tempm1(1,@floor(.05*nrepl))
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,6) = tempm1(1,@floor(.95*nrepl))
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,7) = tempm1(1,@floor(.15*nrepl))
              {%statsmat}(!ii2,8) = tempm1(1,@floor(.85*nrepl))

              next

          ' also create individual series for each statistic
          series {%trkname}_base = 0
          series {%trkname}_mn = 0
          series {%trkname}_med = 0
          series {%trkname}_se = 0
          series {%trkname}_lo90 = 0
          series {%trkname}_hi90 = 0
          series {%trkname}_lo70 = 0
          series {%trkname}_hi70 = 0

          group {%trkname}_group {%trkname}_base {%trkname}_mn {%trkname}_med _
              {%trkname}_se {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
              {%trkname}_hi70
          mtos({%statsmat},{%trkname}_group)

          endsub

```

Defines:

makestats, used in chunk 40.

### 6.4.16 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg

208a  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg } 208a \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{master library routines } 208b \rangle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg.  
 Defines:

master\_library, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 176, and 203.

208b  $\langle \text{master library routines } 208b \rangle \equiv$  (208a)

```

'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{quarterly date string shift } 87 \rangle$ 

'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{copy series into group } 88 \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{set group to zero } 89a \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{names of all series in group } 89b \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{create new group } 90 \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{interpolate unavailable observations } 91 \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{set fiscal policy option } 92 \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{set monetary policy option } 93 \rangle$ 
'*****
'*****
'*****
 $\langle \text{set monetary policy fed funds rate } 94 \rangle$ 

```

**6.4.17 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg**

209  $\langle \text{srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg } 209 \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{mce solve library } 210 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg`.

Defines:

`mce_solve_library`, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, and 176.

210  $\langle mce \text{ solve library } 210 \rangle \equiv$  (209 214b)  
 $\langle mce \text{ solve library change history } 95 \rangle$

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle run \text{ model consistent expectations } 97 \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle determine \text{ endogenous and exogenous variables } 104 \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle determine \text{ default method, linesearch, and other options } 107 \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle parse \text{ options containing equal signs } 111a \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle parse \text{ options not containing equal signs } 111b \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle create \text{ common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables } 112 \rangle$ 

```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
 $\langle model \text{ consistent coefficient simulation } 114 \rangle$ 

```



```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<solve model consistent instrument values 123>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments 125>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure 131>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<model consistent armijo optimization rule 133>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<variable terminal values 134>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
<set options based on defaults and overrides 136>
```

```
» *****
» *****
» *****
```

*⟨main unconstrained optimal control simulation 143⟩*

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 147⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 152⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 160⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨solve model consistent expectations model 162⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨convert mcz inequality constraints 164⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨shift left 167⟩
```

```
'*****
'*****
'*****
⟨find next delimiter 168⟩
```

```

' *****
' *****
' *****
<load frbus with transformed subsidiary model 169>

' *****
' *****
' *****
<create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 173>

```

## 6.5 mce solve package

### 6.5.1 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg

213a `<srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg 213a>≡`  
`<mce example1 49>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`example1`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.5.2 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg

213b `<srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg 213b>≡`  
`<mce example2 52>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`example2`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.5.3 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg

213c `<srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg 213c>≡`  
`<mce example3 55>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`example3`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.5.4 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg

213d `<srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg 213d>≡`  
`<mce example4 59>`

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`example4`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.5.5 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg

214a  $\langle \text{srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg } 214a \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{mce example5 62} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`example5`, used in chunk 176.

### 6.5.6 srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg

214b  $\langle \text{srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg } 214b \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{mce solve library 210} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`mce_solve_library`, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, and 176.

## 6.6 state space package

### 6.6.1 srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg

214c  $\langle \text{srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg } 214c \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{data transformations 71} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`data_transformations`, used in chunks 67, 71, 78, and 176.

### 6.6.2 srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg

214d  $\langle \text{srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg } 214d \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{estimation code 74} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`estimation_code`, used in chunks 67 and 176.

### 6.6.3 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg

214e  $\langle \text{srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg } 214e \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{estimation model 67} \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg`.  
 Defines:  
`frbus_supply_estimation`, used in chunk 176.

#### 6.6.4 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg

215a  $\langle \text{srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg } 215a \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{supply filter } 78 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg`.  
Defines:

`frbus_supply_filter`, used in chunks 78 and 176.

#### 6.6.5 srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg

215b  $\langle \text{srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg } 215b \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{initial values } 81 \rangle$

This code is written to file `srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg`.  
Defines:

`initial_values`, used in chunks 67, 74, and 176.



# Notes, Bibliography and Indexes

## 6.7 Evview Functions

217a  $\langle$ *Presumed Evview Functions* 217a $\rangle \equiv$

Defines:

`close`, used in chunks 67, 74, 78, 114, and 136.  
`dbopen`, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 67, 78, and 203.  
`fetch`, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 67, 78, and 203.  
`solve`, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 123, 125, 143, 147, 152, 175, and 176.  
`sspace`, used in chunk 74.  
`wfclose`, used in chunk 78.  
`wfcreate`, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, 67, 78, and 203.  
`wfopen`, used in chunk 78.  
`wfsave`, used in chunk 67.  
`xget`, used in chunks 147 and 152.  
`xrun`, used in chunks 147 and 152.

## 6.8 Variable Information

217b  $\langle$ *Presumed varinfo Schema* 217b $\rangle \equiv$

Defines:

`decomp`, used in chunk 193.  
`sector`, used in chunks 7, 17, 67, 71, 74, 78, and 193.  
`stoch`, used in chunks 40 and 193.  
`varinfo`, used in chunks 40, 175, 176, 193, 194a, and 203.  
`vdsc`, never used.  
`vinfo_decomp`, used in chunk 193.  
`vinfo_sector`, used in chunk 193.  
`vinfo_stoch`, used in chunks 40 and 193.  
`vinfo_text`, used in chunks 193 and 205.  
`vinfo_vname`, used in chunks 40 and 193.  
`vinfo_vrule`, used in chunk 193.  
`vinfo_vtype`, used in chunk 193.  
`vname`, used in chunks 40, 193, 203, and 205.  
`vrule`, used in chunk 193.  
`vtype`, used in chunk 193.

## 6.9 Series Names

218  $\langle$ Model Data Series Names 218 $\rangle \equiv$

Defines:

ceng, never used.  
 d01q4, never used.  
 d2002, never used.  
 d2003, never used.  
 d69, never used.  
 d79a, never used.  
 d8095, never used.  
 d81, never used.  
 d83, never used.  
 d86, never used.  
 d87, never used.  
 dcon, never used.  
 ddockm, never used.  
 ddockx, never used.  
 delrff, used in chunk 23.  
 deuc, never used.  
 dfmpr, never used.  
 dfpdt, used in chunks 23 and 92.  
 dfpex, used in chunks 23, 40, and 92.  
 dfpsrp, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 31, and 92.  
 dglprd, never used.  
 dmpalt, used in chunk 93.  
 dmpex, used in chunks 40 and 93.  
 dmpgen, used in chunks 17 and 93.  
 dmpintay, used in chunks 3, 7, 31, 40, and 93.  
 dmprr, used in chunk 93.  
 dmpstb, used in chunk 40.  
 dmptay, used in chunks 23 and 93.  
 dmptlr, used in chunk 93.  
 dmptlur, never used.  
 dmptmax, never used.  
 dmptpi, never used.  
 dmpttr, used in chunks 11 and 40.  
 dmpttrsh, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.  
 dpadj, never used.  
 dpgap, never used.  
 drstar, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.  
 ec, used in chunk 74.  
 ecd, used in chunk 203.  
 ech, never used.  
 ecnia, never used.  
 ecnian, never used.  
 eco, used in chunk 203.  
 egf, never used.  
 egfi, never used.  
 egfin, never used.  
 egfit, never used.  
 egfl, never used.  
 egfln, never used.  
 egflt, never used.  
 egfn, used in chunk 31.  
 egfo, never used.  
 egfon, used in chunk 31.



egfot, never used.  
egpdin, never used.  
egs, never used.  
egsi, never used.  
egsin, never used.  
egsit, never used.  
egsl, never used.  
egsln, never used.  
egslt, never used.  
egsn, never used.  
egso, never used.  
egson, never used.  
egsot, never used.  
eh, used in chunk 203.  
ehn, never used.  
ei, never used.  
ein, never used.  
em, never used.  
emn, never used.  
emo, used in chunk 203.  
emon, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
emp, never used.  
empn, never used.  
empt, never used.  
epd, used in chunk 203.  
epdn, never used.  
epi, used in chunk 203.  
epin, never used.  
eps, used in chunk 203.  
epsn, never used.  
ex, used in chunks 67, 78, and 203.  
exn, never used.  
fcbn, never used.  
fcbrn, never used.  
fgdp, never used.  
fgdpt, never used.  
fnicn, never used.  
fniln, never used.  
fnin, never used.  
fnirn, never used.  
fpc, never used.  
fpcm, never used.  
fpi10, never used.  
fpi10t, never used.  
fpic, never used.  
fpitrg, never used.  
fpx, never used.  
fpxm, never used.  
fpxr, used in chunk 31.  
fpxrr, never used.  
fpxrrt, never used.  
frl10, never used.  
frs10, never used.  
frstar, never used.  
ftcin, never used.  
fxgap, never used.  
fynicn, never used.

fyniln, never used.  
 fynin, never used.  
 gfdbtn, never used.  
 gfdrt, never used.  
 gfintn, never used.  
 gfs, never used.  
 gfsn, never used.  
 gfsrpn, never used.  
 gfsrt, never used.  
 gfsbn, never used.  
 gfsbn, never used.  
 gft, never used.  
 gftn, never used.  
 gfttrd, never used.  
 gfttrt, never used.  
 gsdbtn, never used.  
 gsdrtr, never used.  
 gsintn, never used.  
 gssrpn, never used.  
 gssrt, never used.  
 gssbn, never used.  
 gssbn, never used.  
 gst, never used.  
 gstn, never used.  
 gstrd, never used.  
 gstrtr, never used.  
 hgemp, never used.  
 hggdp, used in chunk 40.  
 hggdpt, never used.  
 hgpcdr, never used.  
 hgpdr, never used.  
 hgpir, never used.  
 hgpkir, never used.  
 hgppsr, never used.  
 hgvpd, never used.  
 hgvpi, never used.  
 hgups, never used.  
 hgx, never used.  
 hgynid, never used.  
 hks, never used.  
 hksr, never used.  
 hlept, never used.  
 hlprdt, never used.  
 hmfpt, used in chunks 31, 67, and 78.  
 hqlfpr, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
 hqlww, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
 huqpcr, never used.  
 huxb, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
 hxbt, never used.  
 jccacn, never used.  
 jccan, never used.  
 jkcd, never used.  
 jrctd, never used.  
 jrth, never used.  
 jrpd, never used.  
 jrpi, never used.  
 jrps, never used.

jygfen, never used.  
jygfgn, never used.  
jygsgn, never used.  
jygsgn, never used.  
jyncn, never used.  
kcd, never used.  
kh, never used.  
ki, used in chunk 203.  
kpd, never used.  
kpi, never used.  
kps, never used.  
ks, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
lef, never used.  
left, used in chunks 23, 40, 125, 164, and 203.  
leh, never used.  
leo, used in chunk 203.  
lep, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
leppot, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
les, never used.  
lest, never used.  
leuc, never used.  
lf, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
lfpr, used in chunks 71, 74, and 203.  
lhp, used in chunks 67, 71, and 203.  
lprdt, never used.  
lqualt, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
lur, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 40, 67, 71, and 196b.  
lurbis, never used.  
lurnat, used in chunks 23, 67, and 78.  
lurtrsh, used in chunk 11.  
lww, used in chunk 203.  
mei, never used.  
mep, never used.  
mfpt, used in chunk 31.  
n16, used in chunks 67, 71, and 78.  
pcdr, never used.  
pceng, never used.  
pcengr, used in chunk 203.  
pcer, used in chunks 67, 71, and 203.  
pcfr, used in chunk 203.  
pcfrr, never used.  
pchr, never used.  
pcnia, never used.  
pcor, never used.  
pcpi, never used.  
pcpix, never used.  
pcstar, never used.  
pcxfe, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
pgdp, used in chunk 67.  
pgfir, never used.  
pgfl, never used.  
pgfor, never used.  
pgsir, never used.  
pgsl, never used.  
pgsor, never used.  
phouse, never used.  
phr, never used.

pic4, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, and 196b.  
picngr, never used.  
picnia, used in chunks 40 and 196b.  
picx4, used in chunks 17, 40, and 196b.  
picxfe, used in chunks 40, 94, 196b, and 203.  
pieci, used in chunk 203.  
pigdp, never used.  
pipl, never used.  
pipxnc, never used.  
pitarg, used in chunk 17.  
pitrsh, used in chunk 11.  
pkir, never used.  
pkpdr, never used.  
pl, never used.  
plmin, never used.  
plminr, never used.  
pmo, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
pmp, never used.  
poil, used in chunk 31.  
poilr, never used.  
poilrt, never used.  
ppdr, never used.  
ppir, never used.  
ppsr, never used.  
ptr, used in chunks 17, 67, and 74.  
pwstar, never used.  
pxb, used in chunks 31, 67, and 71.  
pxg, never used.  
pxnc, never used.  
pxp, never used.  
pxr, never used.  
qec, never used.  
qecd, never used.  
qeco, never used.  
qeh, never used.  
qepd, never used.  
qepi, never used.  
qeps, never used.  
qkir, never used.  
qleor, never used.  
qlep, never used.  
qlf, never used.  
qlfpr, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
qlhp, never used.  
qlww, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
qpcnia, never used.  
qpl, never used.  
qpmo, never used.  
qpxg, never used.  
qpxnc, never used.  
qpxp, never used.  
qynidn, never used.  
rbbb, never used.  
rbbbe, never used.  
rbbbp, used in chunk 203.  
rcar, used in chunk 203.  
rccd, never used.

rcch, never used.  
rcgain, used in chunk 203.  
req, never used.  
reqp, used in chunks 31 and 198.  
rff, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 94, 196b, and 198.  
rffalt, used in chunks 11 and 94.  
rffe, used in chunks 17, 40, and 94.  
rfffix, used in chunk 94.  
rffgen, used in chunks 11, 17, and 94.  
rffintay, used in chunks 11, 31, 40, and 94.  
rffmin, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.  
rffrule, never used.  
rfftay, used in chunks 11 and 94.  
rfft1r, used in chunks 11 and 94.  
rfnict, never used.  
rfrs10, never used.  
rfynic, never used.  
rfynil, never used.  
rg10, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, and 23.  
rg10e, never used.  
rg10p, used in chunks 31 and 203.  
rg30, never used.  
rg30e, never used.  
rg30p, used in chunk 203.  
rg5, never used.  
rg5e, never used.  
rg5p, used in chunk 203.  
rgfint, never used.  
rgw, never used.  
rme, used in chunk 203.  
rpd, never used.  
rrffe, never used.  
rrfix, used in chunk 94.  
rrmet, never used.  
rrtr, never used.  
rspnia, never used.  
rstar, never used.  
rtb, never used.  
rtbe, used in chunk 203.  
rtinv, never used.  
rtpd, never used.  
rtpi, never used.  
rtps, never used.  
rtr, never used.  
t47, never used.  
tapdad, never used.  
tapdd, never used.  
tapddp, never used.  
tapds, never used.  
tapdt, never used.  
tapsad, never used.  
tapsda, never used.  
tapssl, never used.  
tfcin, never used.  
tfdiv, never used.  
tfibn, never used.  
tfpn, never used.

tfsin, never used.  
trfci, never used.  
trfcim, never used.  
trfib, never used.  
trfp, never used.  
trfpm, never used.  
trfpt, never used.  
trfptx, never used.  
trfsi, never used.  
trsci, never used.  
trscit, never used.  
trsib, never used.  
trsibt, never used.  
trsp, never used.  
trsp, never used.  
trsp, never used.  
trsppt, never used.  
trsppt, never used.  
trspptx, never used.  
trssi, never used.  
trssit, never used.  
tryh, never used.  
tscin, never used.  
tsibn, never used.  
tspn, never used.  
tssin, never used.  
uces, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
ucfs, never used.  
uemot, never used.  
uemp, never used.  
ufcbr, never used.  
ufnir, never used.  
ufpcm, never used.  
ufpxm, never used.  
uftcin, never used.  
ugfdbt, never used.  
ugsdbt, never used.  
ugsint, never used.  
ugssub, never used.  
ujcca, never used.  
ujccac, never used.  
ujygfe, never used.  
ujygfg, never used.  
ujygse, never used.  
ujygsg, never used.  
ulef, never used.  
ules, never used.  
upcpi, never used.  
upcpix, never used.  
upgfl, never used.  
upgsl, never used.  
upkpd, never used.  
upmp, never used.  
upxb, never used.  
uqpct, never used.  
uveoa, never used.  
uvpd, never used.  
uvpi, never used.  
uvps, never used.

uxbt, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
uxeng, never used.  
uyd, never used.  
uyhi, never used.  
uyhln, never used.  
uyhptn, never used.  
uyhsn, never used.  
uyhtn, never used.  
uyl, never used.  
uyni, never used.  
uynicp, never used.  
uyp, never used.  
uysen, never used.  
veo, never used.  
veoa, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
vpd, never used.  
vpi, never used.  
vps, never used.  
wdnfcn, never used.  
wpo, never used.  
wpon, never used.  
wps, never used.  
wpsn, never used.  
xb, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
xbn, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
xbo, never used.  
xbt, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
xeng, never used.  
xfs, never used.  
xfsn, never used.  
xg, never used.  
xgap, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 40.  
xgap2, used in chunks 17, 40, and 196b.  
xgde, never used.  
xgden, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
xgdi, never used.  
xgdin, used in chunks 67 and 71.  
xgdo, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
xgdp, used in chunks 40, 67, and 71.  
xgdpn, used in chunks 31, 67, and 71.  
xgdpt, used in chunks 67 and 78.  
xgdptn, never used.  
xgn, never used.  
xgo, never used.  
xgpot, never used.  
xp, never used.  
xpn, never used.  
ycsn, never used.  
ydn, never used.  
ygfsn, never used.  
ygssn, never used.  
yh, never used.  
yhgap, never used.  
yhibn, used in chunk 203.  
yhin, never used.  
yhl, never used.  
yhln, never used.

yhp, never used.  
yhpacd, never used.  
yhpgap, never used.  
yhpntn, never used.  
yhpshr, never used.  
yhptn, never used.  
yhsshr, never used.  
yhsn, never used.  
yht, never used.  
yhtgap, never used.  
yhtn, never used.  
yhtshr, never used.  
ykin, never used.  
ykpdn, never used.  
ykpsn, never used.  
ymsdn, never used.  
ynicpn, never used.  
ynidn, used in chunk 203.  
yniin, used in chunk 203.  
yniln, never used.  
ynin, never used.  
ynisen, never used.  
ypn, never used.  
zdivgr, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zecd, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zeco, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zeh, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zgap05, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zgap10, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zgap30, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zgapc2, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zlhp, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpi10, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpi10f, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpi5, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpi5, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpic30, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpic58, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, and 173.  
zpicxfe, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zpieci, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zrff10, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zrff30, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zrff5, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zvpd, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zvpi, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zvps, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zxbd, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, and 187.  
zxbi, used in chunks 7, 17, 31, and 187.  
zxbs, used in chunks 7, 17, 31, and 187.  
zyh, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zyhp, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zyhpst, never used.  
zyhst, never used.  
zyht, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.  
zyhtst, never used.  
zynid, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, and 187.



## 6.10 Chunks

*<check.sh 176>*  
*<compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 160>*  
*<compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments 125>*  
*<convert mcz inequality constraints 164>*  
*<copy it 196b>*  
*<copy series into group 88>*  
*<create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables 112>*  
*<create new group 90>*  
*<create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 173>*  
*<data transformations 71>*  
*<determine default method, linesearch, and other options 107>*  
*<determine endogenous and exogenous variables 104>*  
*<estimation code 74>*  
*<estimation model 67>*  
*<find next delimiter 168>*  
*<find variable description 205>*  
*<form table 206b>*  
*<frbus example1 3>*  
*<frbus example2 7>*  
*<frbus example3 11>*  
*<frbus example4 17>*  
*<frbus ocpolicy 23>*  
*<graph it 198>*  
*<initial values 81>*  
*<interpolate unavailable observations 91>*  
*<load frbus coefficients 177b>*  
*<load frbus coefficients call 178a>*  
*<load frbus equations 179>*  
*<load frbus equations call 180a>*  
*<load frbus with transformed subsidiary model 169>*  
*<load mce coefficients 181>*  
*<load mce coefficients call 182>*  
*<load mce equations 184>*  
*<load mce equations call 187>*  
*<load some equations 189>*  
*<load some equations call 191>*  
*<load variable information 193>*  
*<load variable information call 194a>*  
*<main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 147>*  
*<main unconstrained optimal control simulation 143>*  
*<make statistics 207>*  
*<master library routines 208b>*  
*<mce example1 49>*

<mce example2 52>  
 <mce example3 55>  
 <mce example4 59>  
 <mce example5 62>  
 <mce solve library 210>  
 <mce solve library change history 95>  
 <model consistent armijo optimization rule 133>  
 <model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure 131>  
 <model consistent coefficient simulation 114>  
 <model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 152>  
 <Model Data Series Names 218>  
 <names of all series in group 89b>  
 <parse options containing equal signs 111a>  
 <parse options not containing equal signs 111b>  
 <plot historical residuals of key equations 203>  
 <plot it 197>  
 <Presumed Eview Functions 217a>  
 <Presumed varinfo Schema 217b>  
 <quarterly date string shift 87>  
 <run model consistent expectations 97>  
 <set fiscal policy option 92>  
 <set group to zero 89a>  
 <set monetary policy fed funds rate 94>  
 <set monetary policy option 93>  
 <set options based on defaults and overrides 136>  
 <setup.sh 175>  
 <shift left 167>  
 <simulate six ping simulations, aka simple IRFs 31>  
 <solve model consistent expectations model 162>  
 <solve model consistent instrument values 123>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg 177a>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg 178b>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg 180b>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg 183>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg 188>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg 192>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg 194b>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 194c>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg 195a>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg 195b>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg 195c>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg 195d>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg 196a>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 202>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg 206a>  
 <srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg 208a>

<srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg 209>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg 213a>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg 213b>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg 213c>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg 213d>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg 214a>  
 <srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg 214b>  
 <srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg 214c>  
 <srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg 214d>  
 <srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg 214e>  
 <srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg 215a>  
 <srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg 215b>  
 <stochastic simulations under variable expectations 40>  
 <supply filter 78>  
 <variable terminal values 134>

## 6.11 Index

ceng: [218](#)  
 close: 67, 74, 78, 114, 136, [217a](#)  
 copyit: 31, [196b](#)  
 d01q4: [218](#)  
 d2002: [218](#)  
 d2003: [218](#)  
 d69: [218](#)  
 d79a: [218](#)  
 d8095: [218](#)  
 d81: [218](#)  
 d83: [218](#)  
 d86: [218](#)  
 d87: [218](#)  
 data\_transformations: 67, 71, 78, 176, [214c](#)  
 dateshift: 11, 23, [87](#), 91, 152  
 dbopen: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 67, 78, 203, [217a](#)  
 dcon: [218](#)  
 ddockm: [218](#)  
 ddockx: [218](#)  
 decomp: 193, [217b](#)  
 delrff: 23, [218](#)  
 deuc: [218](#)  
 dfmpr: [218](#)  
 dfpdbt: 23, 92, [218](#)  
 dfpex: 23, 40, 92, [218](#)  
 dfpsrp: 3, 7, 11, 17, 31, 92, [218](#)  
 dglprd: [218](#)

dmpalt: 93, [218](#)  
dmpex: 40, 93, [218](#)  
dmpgen: 17, 93, [218](#)  
dmpintay: 3, 7, 31, 40, 93, [218](#)  
dmprr: 93, [218](#)  
dmpstb: 40, [218](#)  
dmptay: 23, 93, [218](#)  
dmptlr: 93, [218](#)  
dmptlur: [218](#)  
dmptmax: [218](#)  
dmptpi: [218](#)  
dmptr: 11, 40, [218](#)  
dmptrsh: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, [218](#)  
dpadj: [218](#)  
dpgap: [218](#)  
drstar: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, [218](#)  
ec: 74, [218](#)  
ecd: 203, [218](#)  
ech: [218](#)  
ecnia: [218](#)  
ecnian: [218](#)  
eco: 203, [218](#)  
egf: [218](#)  
egfi: [218](#)  
egfin: [218](#)  
egfit: [218](#)  
egfl: [218](#)  
egfln: [218](#)  
egflt: [218](#)  
egfn: 31, [218](#)  
egfo: [218](#)  
egfon: 31, [218](#)  
egfot: [218](#)  
egpdin: [218](#)  
egs: [218](#)  
egsi: [218](#)  
egsin: [218](#)  
egsit: [218](#)  
egsl: [218](#)  
egsln: [218](#)  
egslt: [218](#)  
egsn: [218](#)  
egso: [218](#)  
egson: [218](#)  
egsot: [218](#)  
eh: 203, [218](#)

ehn: [218](#)  
ei: [218](#)  
ein: [218](#)  
em: [218](#)  
emn: [218](#)  
emo: 203, [218](#)  
emon: 67, 71, [218](#)  
emp: [218](#)  
empn: [218](#)  
empt: [218](#)  
epd: 203, [218](#)  
epdn: [218](#)  
epi: 203, [218](#)  
epin: [218](#)  
eps: 203, [218](#)  
epsn: [218](#)  
estimation\_code: 67, 176, [214d](#)  
ex: 67, 78, 203, [218](#)  
example1: 176, [194c](#), [213a](#)  
example2: 176, [195a](#), [213b](#)  
example3: 176, [195b](#), [213c](#)  
example4: 176, [195c](#), [213d](#)  
example5: 176, [214a](#)  
exn: [218](#)  
fcbn: [218](#)  
fcbrn: [218](#)  
fetch: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 67, 78, 203, [217a](#)  
fgdp: [218](#)  
fgdpt: [218](#)  
find\_next\_delimit: 164, [168](#)  
find\_var\_description: 203, [205](#)  
fnicn: [218](#)  
fniln: [218](#)  
fnin: [218](#)  
fnirn: [218](#)  
fpc: [218](#)  
fpcm: [218](#)  
fpi10: [218](#)  
fpi10t: [218](#)  
fpic: [218](#)  
fpitrg: [218](#)  
fpx: [218](#)  
fpxm: [218](#)  
fpxr: 31, [218](#)  
fpxrr: [218](#)  
fpxrrt: [218](#)

frbus\_supply\_estimation: 176, 214e  
frbus\_supply\_filter: 78, 176, 215a  
frl10: 218  
frs10: 218  
frstar: 218  
ftcin: 218  
fxgap: 218  
fynicn: 218  
fyniln: 218  
fynin: 218  
gfdbtn: 218  
gfdrt: 218  
gfintn: 218  
gfs: 218  
gfsn: 218  
gfsrpn: 218  
gfsrt: 218  
gfsbn: 218  
gfsbn: 218  
gft: 218  
gftn: 218  
gftrd: 218  
gftrt: 218  
graphit: 31, 198  
group2group: 88  
group2zero: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 89a, 203  
groupnames2string: 40, 89b  
groupnew: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 90, 203  
gsdbtn: 218  
gsdrt: 218  
gsintn: 218  
gssrpn: 218  
gssrt: 218  
gssbn: 218  
gssbn: 218  
gst: 218  
gstn: 218  
gstrd: 218  
gsttr: 218  
hgemp: 218  
hggdp: 40, 218  
hggdpt: 218  
hgpcdr: 218  
hgpcdr: 218  
hgpcdr: 218  
hgpcdr: 218  
hgpcdr: 218  
hgpcdr: 218

hgppsr: [218](#)  
hgvpd: [218](#)  
hgvpi: [218](#)  
hgvps: [218](#)  
hgx: [218](#)  
hgynid: [218](#)  
hks: [218](#)  
hksr: [218](#)  
hlept: [218](#)  
hlprdt: [218](#)  
hmfpt: 31, 67, 78, [218](#)  
hqlfpr: 67, 78, [218](#)  
hqlww: 67, 78, [218](#)  
huqpct: [218](#)  
huxb: 67, 78, [218](#)  
hxbt: [218](#)  
initial\_values: 67, 74, [81](#), 176, [215b](#)  
interp\_lin: 40, [91](#)  
jccacn: [218](#)  
jccan: [218](#)  
jkcd: [218](#)  
jrcd: [218](#)  
jrh: [218](#)  
jrpdt: [218](#)  
jrpi: [218](#)  
jrps: [218](#)  
jygfen: [218](#)  
jygfgn: [218](#)  
jygsen: [218](#)  
jygsgn: [218](#)  
jyncn: [218](#)  
kcd: [218](#)  
kh: [218](#)  
ki: 203, [218](#)  
kpd: [218](#)  
kpi: [218](#)  
kps: [218](#)  
ks: 67, 71, [218](#)  
ld\_frbus\_cfs: 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, [177a](#), [177b](#), 178a, 194b, 203  
ld\_frbus\_eqs: 3, 11, 40, 169, 176, [178b](#), [179](#), 180a, 194b, 203  
ld\_mce\_cfs: 169, 176, [180b](#), [181](#), 182, 194b  
ld\_mce\_eqs: 169, 176, [183](#), [184](#), 187, 194b  
ld\_some\_eqs: 169, 176, [188](#), [189](#), 191, 194b  
ld\_varinfo: 40, 176, [192](#), [193](#), 194a, 194b, 203  
lef: [218](#)  
left: 23, 40, 125, 164, 203, [218](#)

leh: [218](#)  
leo: 203, [218](#)  
lep: 67, 71, [218](#)  
leppot: 67, 78, [218](#)  
les: [218](#)  
lest: [218](#)  
leuc: [218](#)  
lf: 67, 71, [218](#)  
lfpr: 71, 74, 203, [218](#)  
lhp: 67, 71, 203, [218](#)  
lprdt: [218](#)  
lqualt: 67, 71, [218](#)  
lur: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 40, 67, 71, 196b, [218](#)  
lurbls: [218](#)  
lurnat: 23, 67, 78, [218](#)  
lurtrsh: 11, [218](#)  
lww: 203, [218](#)  
make\_frbus\_mcevars: 7, 17, 23, 31, 95, [173](#)  
makestats: 40, [207](#)  
master\_library: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 176, 203, [208a](#)  
mce\_load\_frbus: 7, 17, 23, 31, 95, [169](#)  
mce\_run: 7, 17, 23, 31, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, 95, [97](#), 112, 114  
mce\_solve\_library: 7, 17, 23, 31, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, 176, [209](#), [214b](#)  
mcz\_algo: 97, [107](#)  
mcz\_armijo: 114, [133](#)  
mcz\_constraints: 136, [164](#)  
mcz\_derivs: 112, 114, [125](#)  
mcz\_equalopt: 97, 107, [111a](#), 114, 136, 169  
mcz\_hasopt: 97, [111b](#), 114, 136  
mcz\_lmr: 114, [131](#)  
mcz\_opt: 136, [143](#)  
mcz\_opt\_deriv: 143, 147, 152, [160](#)  
mcz\_opt\_qp: 95, 136, [147](#)  
mcz\_opt\_setup: 97, [136](#)  
mcz\_opt\_solve: 143, 147, [162](#)  
mcz\_opt\_tc: 95, 136, [152](#)  
mcz\_parsemod: 97, [104](#)  
mcz\_sim: 95, 97, [114](#), 147, 152, 160, 162  
mcz\_sim\_setup: 97, [112](#)  
mcz\_solvit: 95, 112, 114, [123](#), 131, 133  
mcz\_terminal: 123, [134](#)  
mei: [218](#)  
mep: [218](#)  
mfpt: 31, [218](#)  
n16: 67, 71, 78, [218](#)  
ocpolicy: 176, [195d](#)



pcdr: [218](#)  
pceng: [218](#)  
pcengr: 203, [218](#)  
pcer: 67, 71, 203, [218](#)  
pcfr: 203, [218](#)  
pcfrrt: [218](#)  
pchr: [218](#)  
pcnia: [218](#)  
pcor: [218](#)  
pcpi: [218](#)  
pcpix: [218](#)  
pcstar: [218](#)  
pcxfe: 67, 71, [218](#)  
pgdp: 67, [218](#)  
pgfir: [218](#)  
pgfl: [218](#)  
pgfor: [218](#)  
pgsir: [218](#)  
pgsl: [218](#)  
pgsor: [218](#)  
phouse: [218](#)  
phr: [218](#)  
pic4: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 196b, [218](#)  
picngr: [218](#)  
picnia: 40, 196b, [218](#)  
picx4: 17, 40, 196b, [218](#)  
picxfe: 40, 94, 196b, 203, [218](#)  
pieci: 203, [218](#)  
pigdp: [218](#)  
pings: 31, 176, [196a](#)  
pipl: [218](#)  
pipxnc: [218](#)  
pitarg: 17, [218](#)  
pitrsh: 11, [218](#)  
pkir: [218](#)  
pkpdr: [218](#)  
pl: [218](#)  
plmin: [218](#)  
plminr: [218](#)  
plot\_resids: 176, [202](#)  
plotit: [197](#), 198  
pmo: 67, 71, [218](#)  
pmp: [218](#)  
poil: 31, [218](#)  
poilr: [218](#)  
poilrt: [218](#)

ppdr: [218](#)  
ppir: [218](#)  
ppsr: [218](#)  
ptr: 17, 67, 74, [218](#)  
pwstar: [218](#)  
pxb: 31, 67, 71, [218](#)  
pxg: [218](#)  
pxnc: [218](#)  
pxp: [218](#)  
pxr: [218](#)  
qec: [218](#)  
qecd: [218](#)  
qeco: [218](#)  
qeh: [218](#)  
qepd: [218](#)  
qepi: [218](#)  
qeps: [218](#)  
qkir: [218](#)  
qleor: [218](#)  
qlép: [218](#)  
qlf: [218](#)  
qlfpr: 67, 78, [218](#)  
qlhp: [218](#)  
qlww: 67, 78, [218](#)  
qpcnia: [218](#)  
qpl: [218](#)  
qpmo: [218](#)  
qpxg: [218](#)  
qpxnc: [218](#)  
qpxp: [218](#)  
qynidn: [218](#)  
rbbb: [218](#)  
rbbbe: [218](#)  
rbbbp: 203, [218](#)  
rcar: 203, [218](#)  
rccd: [218](#)  
rcch: [218](#)  
rcgain: 203, [218](#)  
regadd: 176, [194b](#)  
req: [218](#)  
reqp: 31, 198, [218](#)  
rff: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 94, 196b, 198, [218](#)  
rffalt: 11, 94, [218](#)  
rffe: 17, 40, 94, [218](#)  
rfffix: 94, [218](#)  
rffgen: 11, 17, 94, [218](#)

rffintay: 11, 31, 40, 94, 218  
rffmin: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 218  
rffrule: 218  
rfftay: 11, 94, 218  
rfftlr: 11, 94, 218  
rfnict: 218  
rfrs10: 218  
rfynic: 218  
rfynil: 218  
rg10: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 218  
rg10e: 218  
rg10p: 31, 203, 218  
rg30: 218  
rg30e: 218  
rg30p: 203, 218  
rg5: 218  
rg5e: 218  
rg5p: 203, 218  
rgfint: 218  
rgw: 218  
rme: 203, 218  
rpd: 218  
rrffe: 218  
rrfix: 94, 218  
rrmet: 218  
rrtr: 218  
rspnia: 218  
rstar: 218  
rtb: 218  
rtbe: 203, 218  
rtinv: 218  
rtpd: 218  
rtpi: 218  
rtps: 218  
rtr: 218  
saved\_results\_new: 67  
sector: 7, 17, 67, 71, 74, 78, 193, 217b  
set\_fp: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 92  
set\_mp: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 93  
set\_mpvars2rff: 94  
shiftleft: 114, 167  
solve: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 123, 125, 143, 147, 152, 175, 176, 217a  
ss\_estimation: 67, 74  
sspace: 74, 217a  
stoch: 40, 193, 217b  
stochsim: 176, 206a

t47: 218  
tableform: 40, 206b  
tapdad: 218  
tapdd: 218  
tapddp: 218  
tapds: 218  
tapdt: 218  
tapsad: 218  
tapsda: 218  
tapssl: 218  
tfcin: 218  
tfdiv: 218  
tfibn: 218  
tfpn: 218  
tfsin: 218  
trfci: 218  
trfcim: 218  
trfib: 218  
trfp: 218  
trfpm: 218  
trfpt: 218  
trfptx: 218  
trfsi: 218  
trsci: 218  
trscit: 218  
trsib: 218  
trsibt: 218  
trsp: 218  
trspp: 218  
trspt: 218  
trsptx: 218  
trssi: 218  
trssit: 218  
tryh: 218  
tscin: 218  
tsibn: 218  
tspn: 218  
tssin: 218  
uces: 67, 71, 218  
ucfs: 218  
uemot: 218  
uemp: 218  
ufcbr: 218  
ufnir: 218  
ufpcm: 218  
ufpxm: 218

uftcin: [218](#)  
ugfdbt: [218](#)  
ugsdbt: [218](#)  
ugsint: [218](#)  
ugssub: [218](#)  
ujcca: [218](#)  
ujccac: [218](#)  
ujygfe: [218](#)  
ujygfg: [218](#)  
ujygse: [218](#)  
ujygsg: [218](#)  
ulef: [218](#)  
ules: [218](#)  
upcpi: [218](#)  
upcpix: [218](#)  
upgfl: [218](#)  
upgsl: [218](#)  
upkpd: [218](#)  
upmp: [218](#)  
upxb: [218](#)  
uqpct: [218](#)  
uveoa: [218](#)  
uvpd: [218](#)  
uvpi: [218](#)  
uvps: [218](#)  
uxbt: [67](#), [78](#), [218](#)  
uxeng: [218](#)  
uyd: [218](#)  
uyhi: [218](#)  
uyhln: [218](#)  
uyhptn: [218](#)  
uyhsn: [218](#)  
uyhtn: [218](#)  
uyl: [218](#)  
yni: [218](#)  
ynicp: [218](#)  
uyp: [218](#)  
uysen: [218](#)  
varinfo: [40](#), [175](#), [176](#), [193](#), [194a](#), [203](#), [217b](#)  
vdesc: [217b](#)  
veo: [218](#)  
veoa: [67](#), [71](#), [218](#)  
vinfo\_decomp: [193](#), [217b](#)  
vinfo\_sector: [193](#), [217b](#)  
vinfo\_stoch: [40](#), [193](#), [217b](#)  
vinfo\_text: [193](#), [205](#), [217b](#)

vinfo\_vname: 40, 193, [217b](#)  
vinfo\_vrule: 193, [217b](#)  
vinfo\_vtype: 193, [217b](#)  
vname: 40, 193, 203, 205, [217b](#)  
vpd: [218](#)  
vpi: [218](#)  
vps: [218](#)  
vrule: 193, [217b](#)  
vtype: 193, [217b](#)  
wdnfcn: [218](#)  
wfclose: 78, [217a](#)  
wfcreate: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, 49, 52, 55, 59, 62, 67, 78, 203, [217a](#)  
wfoopen: 78, [217a](#)  
wfsave: 67, [217a](#)  
wpo: [218](#)  
wpon: [218](#)  
wps: [218](#)  
wpsn: [218](#)  
xb: 67, 71, [218](#)  
xbn: 67, 71, [218](#)  
xbo: [218](#)  
xbt: 67, 78, [218](#)  
xeng: [218](#)  
xfs: [218](#)  
xfsn: [218](#)  
xg: [218](#)  
xgap: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 40, [218](#)  
xgap2: 17, 40, 196b, [218](#)  
xgde: [218](#)  
xgden: 67, 71, [218](#)  
xgdi: [218](#)  
xgdin: 67, 71, [218](#)  
xgdo: 67, 78, [218](#)  
xgdp: 40, 67, 71, [218](#)  
xgdpn: 31, 67, 71, [218](#)  
xgdpt: 67, 78, [218](#)  
xgdptn: [218](#)  
xget: 147, 152, [217a](#)  
xgn: [218](#)  
xgo: [218](#)  
xgpot: [218](#)  
xp: [218](#)  
xpn: [218](#)  
xrun: 147, 152, [217a](#)  
ycsn: [218](#)  
ydn: [218](#)

ygfsn: 218  
ygssn: 218  
yh: 218  
yhgap: 218  
yhibn: 203, 218  
yhin: 218  
yhl: 218  
yhltn: 218  
yhp: 218  
yhpcd: 218  
yhpgap: 218  
yhpntn: 218  
yhpshr: 218  
yhptn: 218  
yhshr: 218  
yhsn: 218  
yht: 218  
yhtgap: 218  
yhtn: 218  
yhtshr: 218  
ykin: 218  
ykpdn: 218  
ykpsn: 218  
ymsdn: 218  
ynicpn: 218  
ynidn: 203, 218  
yniin: 203, 218  
yniln: 218  
ynin: 218  
ynisen: 218  
ypn: 218  
zdivgr: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zecd: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zeco: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zeh: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zgap05: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zgap10: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zgap30: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zgapc2: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zlhp: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpi10: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpi10f: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpi5: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpi5b: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpic30: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpic58: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 218

zpicxfe: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zpieci: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zrff10: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zrff30: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zrff5: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zvpd: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zvpi: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zvps: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zxbd: 7, 17, 23, 31, 187, 218  
zxbi: 7, 17, 31, 187, 218  
zxbs: 7, 17, 31, 187, 218  
zyh: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zyhp: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zyhpst: 218  
zyhst: 218  
zyht: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218  
zyhtst: 218  
zynid: 7, 17, 23, 31, 169, 173, 182, 187, 218